ASTON MARTIN

DB9

1 ..... Introduction
2 ..... Vehicle Security
3 ..... Before Driving
4 ..... Controls
5 ..... Driving
6 ..... Convertible Roof (Volante)
7 ..... Climate Control
8 ..... Audio
9 ..... Car Phone (Option)
10 ..... Bluetooth (Option)
11 ..... Satellite Navigation
12 ..... Maintenance
13 ..... Specifications
A ..... Service
B ..... Assistance
C ..... Warranty
D ..... Dealer Directory
E ..... Alphabetical Index

Whilst every effort has been made to ensure the accuracy of the particulars contained in this Owner's Guide, neither the manufacturer nor the Dealer, by whom this Owner's Guide is supplied, shall in any circumstances be held responsible for any inaccuracy or the consequences thereof.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted, in any form, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or other means without prior written permission from Aston Martin Lagonda Limited.

The manufacturer reserves the right to vary specifications without notice in accordance with its policy of continual product improvement.

Produced by the Technical Publications Department
ASTON MARTIN LAGONDA LIMITED
Banbury Road,
Gaydon,
WARWICK
Warwickshire,
CV35 0DB,
England

Telephone: (+44) 01926 644300
Fax: (+44) 01926 644733

Issue 6 – August 2006
Part Number – 7G43-19A321-AA

Introduction

Contents

Welcome 1.4
Component Location 1.4
Vehicle Identification 1.5
Data Recording 1.5
Reporting Safety Defects 1.6
Vehicle Provenance 1.6

Welcome

to your new Aston Martin.

This Owner's Guide, along with other publications included in your literature pack, provides information which will enhance your pleasure from owning and driving your Aston Martin.

This Owner's Guide has been designed to explain the vehicle's operation and to make the control of it's system easy to understand and operate.

All new owner's are recommended to carefully study the contents of this Owner's Guide prior to driving.

This Owner's Guide forms part of the essential vehicle equipment for homologation purposes and must remain with the vehicle at all times.

The following Warnings, Cautions and Notes are used within this Owner's Guide to call your attention to specific types of information.

Warnings

⚠ Warning ⚠
Identifies procedures which must be followed precisely to help avoid the risk of personal injury.

Cautions

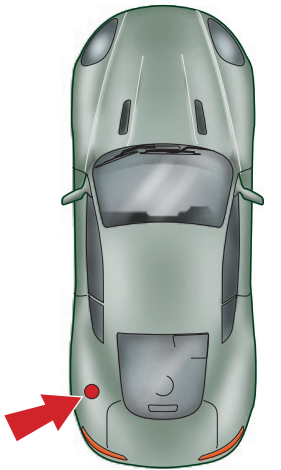
Provided to indicate procedures which must be followed precisely to reduce the possibility of damage to your vehicle.

Notes

Provided to indicate procedures which will help to avoid difficulties in the operation of your vehicle.

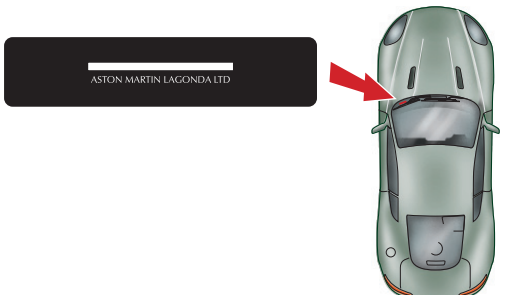
Component Location

All directions for locating components are described as viewed from the driver's seat, i.e. the fuel filler cap indicated on this diagram will be described as 'located at the rear left side of the vehicle'.



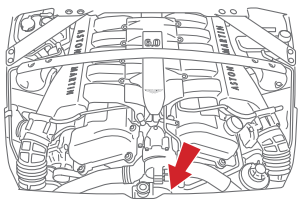
Vehicle Identification

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is shown in the left hand corner of the windscreen.



The Vehicle Identification Plate, attached to the front subframe behind the engine bay front cross member (viewed from above), is model and market dependant:





The vehicle identification number is also stamped into the floorpan in the RH side footwell.

To view the vehicle identification number stamped into the floorpan lift the carpet up, from the front, and then lift the sound deadening material.

Data Recording

Computers in your vehicle are capable of recording detailed data, potentially including but not limited to information such as:

- The use of restraint systems including seat belts by the driver and passengers
- Information about the performance of various systems and modules in the vehicle
- Information related to engine, throttle, steering, brake or other system status

Any of this information could potentially include information regarding how the driver operates the vehicle, potentially including but not limited to information regarding vehicle speed, brake, throttle application or steering input. This information may be stored under regular operation, in a crash or near crash event.

This information may be read out and used by:

- Aston Martin
- Service and repair facilities
- Law enforcement or government agencies
- Others who may assert a right or obtain your consent to know such information

Reporting Safety Defects

If you believe that your vehicle has a safety defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform your Aston Martin Dealer or the manufacturers Service Operations Department at the address shown.

Aston Martin Lagonda Limited
Service Operations Department
Banbury Road
Gaydon
WARWICK
CV35 0DB
England

Telephone:

(International) ++44 1926 644700
(United Kingdom) 01926 644700
Facsimile (++44) 1926 644733

Vehicle Provenance

Model:

e.g. Manual, Automatic

Colour:

	Body Exterior	Interior Trim/ Piping	Interior Veneers

Vehicle Identification Number:

As on the VIN plate

First Owner:

Selling Dealer:

Delivery Date:

Second Owner:

Selling Dealer:

Delivery Date:

Third Owner:

Selling Dealer:

Delivery Date:

Fourth Owner:

Selling Dealer:

Delivery Date:

Fifth Owner:

Selling Dealer:

Delivery Date:

Sixth Owner:

Selling Dealer:

Delivery Date:

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

Vehicle Security

Contents

Introduction 2.2
Aston Martin Tracking 2.2
Vehicle Key and Remote Transmitter 2.4
Unlocking the Vehicle 2.5
Opening the Doors 2.7
Locking the Vehicle 2.7
Master Lock Switch 2.9
Fuel Flap Release 2.9
Boot Lid 2.10
Boot Emergency Release 2.11
Deadlocking 2.12
Drive-Away Locking 2.12
Approach Lighting 2.12
Homesafe 2.13
Alarm Cycle 2.13
Panic Alarm 2.13
Alarm Options 2.14
Reduced Guard 2.14
Remote Transmitter 2.15
Passive Anti-Theft System (PATS) 2.16
Garage Door Opener (Option) 2.18
Personalisation 2.23
Menu 2.24

Introduction

Japanese Market

No vehicle alarm is installed.

Follow lock and unlock procedures as detailed, but disregard references to vehicle alarm system.

This vehicle is protected by an electronic security system. Two levels of alarm system are available:

- Standard
- High Specification (option) – includes an interior movement sensor and a tilt sensor

Vehicle protection is enhanced by a passive anti-theft system (PATS) which provides engine immobilisation if the wrong ignition key is used.

The total vehicle security system includes:

- Remote arming and disarming
- Perimeter sensing
- Remote door, boot, fuel flap release lock and unlock
- A guard reduction mode
- Panic alarm
- Alarm siren with battery backup (in markets where audible sirens are permitted)
- Random code encryption to prevent electronic scanning or grabbing of the ignition key fob identity code
- Interior movement sensor (High spec alarm system only)
- Tilt Sensor (High spec alarm system only)
- Passive anti-theft system (PATS) (Engine immobilisation)

With the vehicle armed, any attempt to forcibly open a door, the boot or the bonnet will result in full alarm activation.

Aston Martin Tracking

(Option (Not Available in all Markets))

(Standard - Mainland UK)

The Aston Martin Tracking system works like an electronic homing device, transmitting a stolen vehicle's location.

The system, which is discretely installed in the vehicle, is an easy-to-use system that provides the following important features:

- Automatically ‘arms’ the security system when the ignition keys are removed and you leave the car
- Detects your presence (using a Driver Recognition tag) and automatically ‘dis-arms’ the system when you return
- Detects attempts to start the vehicle without you being present

- Detects attempts to tow or move the vehicle
- Detects attempts to tamper with the tracking system or disconnect the vehicle battery
- Transmits silent alarms to the 24-hour monitoring service
- Gives you priority access to police in more than 30 countries
- Meets all insurance requirements

Refer to the Aston Martin Tracking User Guide for operating instructions

Please consult your Aston Martin Dealer for details and subscription rates.

Do not keep the Aston Martin Tracking User Guide in the vehicle otherwise you will not be able to refer to it if your vehicle is stolen.

Tracking systems place extra demands on vehicle power while active. This will reduce vehicle battery stand-by time (Refer to 'Battery Charge', page 12.24).

Tag Warning

If the driver recognition tag is not in range of the vehicle tracking system the PATS lamp (Refer to '(5) PATS Lamp', page 4.6) will continue to illuminate after the vehicle has started. If this happens switch the ignition to 'Off' and check the location of the recognition tag.

Refer to your Aston Martin Tracking User Guidebook.

Vehicle Key and Remote Transmitter

The vehicle is supplied with three keys and two remote transmitters. The keys operate the ignition and the door lock, the remote transmitter operates the central locking and alarm systems.

Keep the 'spare' keys and a remote transmitter together and in a safe place.

Do not leave them in the vehicle.

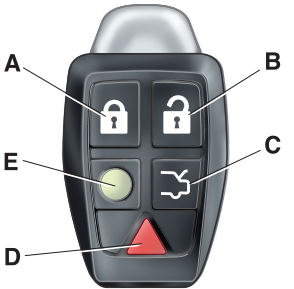
If a key or a remote transmitter is lost, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.



Remote Transmitter

(A) Lock - One step vehicle locking and alarm enable (Refer to 'Locking the Vehicle', page 2.7). The seats and door rear view mirror positions are memorised (Refer to 'Memory Seats', page 3.4).

The vehicle will deadlock after 25 seconds.



(B) Unlock - One step vehicle unlocking (Refer to 'Unlocking the Vehicle', page 2.5). The seats and door rear view mirrors move to their memorised positions (Refer to 'Memory Seats', page 3.4).

(C) Boot Open - Press once to enable the boot catch. Press twice, within three seconds, to release the boot catch (Refer to 'Boot Lid', page 2.10).

(D) Panic Alarm - Activates / deactivates the panic alarm (Refer to 'Panic Alarm', page 2.13).

(E) Approach Light - Activates the front and rear side lamps (Refer to 'Approach Lighting', page 2.12).

Unlocking the Vehicle

Unlocking Using the Remote Transmitter

Stand within 5 m (16 ft) of the vehicle. Point the remote transmitter towards the vehicle and press the button. The direction indicators will flash twice, indicating that the alarm has been deactivated. Both vehicle doors will unlock (Refer to 'Personalisation', page 2.23).

The boot catch and fuel flap release switch will be enabled.

The front seats and door rear view mirrors move to the positions memorised when the vehicle was locked with the remote transmitter (Refer to 'Memory Seats', page 3.4).

For ease of use at night blue LEDs are incorporated into the door handles. A blue LED will illuminate in both door handles when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote transmitter. A door LED will go out once the door is opened. If a door is not opened the LED will go out after two minutes.

The remote transmitter can be programmed to:

a. Unlock all doors and enable the boot and fuel flap release switches with one press of the button

b. Unlock the drivers door only with the first press of the button and the rest of the vehicle with a second press.

(Refer to 'Personalisation', page 2.23)

The vehicle alarm is disabled on the first press of the button.

As the vehicle is unlocked, the interior lamps will switch on for 5 minutes. The lamps will switch off 30 seconds after doors are closed or when the vehicle is started.

Unlocking Using the Ignition Key

Turn the ignition key towards the rear of the vehicle and release to centrally unlock the vehicle, enable the boot and fuel flap release switches.

If unlocking a door using the ignition key after the vehicle was armed, the alarm will activate. To deactivate the alarm insert the key into the ignition and turn to position 'II' or press the button on the remote transmitter.

The front seats and door rear view mirrors will not move to a preset position if the vehicle is unlocked using the ignition key.

Unlocking From Inside the Vehicle

If Locked with the Remote Transmitter

If the vehicle has been locked using the remote transmitter, deadlocking will be active (Refer to 'Deadlocking', page 2.12).

If the reduced guard switch has been activated, one pull of a door handle will centrally unlock the doors, a second pull of the door handle will open that door (Refer to 'Master Lock Switch', page 2.9).

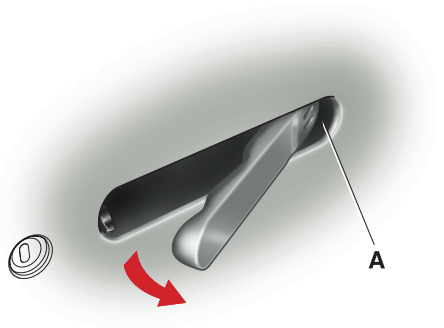
If the reduced guard switch was not activated before locking the vehicle, passengers will not be able to unlock a door from the inside (Refer to 'Reduced Guard', page 2.14).

If Locked with the Vehicle Key

One pull of a door handle will centrally unlock the doors, a second pull of the door handle will open that door (Refer to 'Master Lock Switch', page 2.9).

Opening the Doors

Push at point A and grab the emerging door release. Pull the door release to open the door.



For ease of use at night time.

When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote transmitter blue LEDs will illuminate in the door handles (for two minutes or until the door is opened). Press the door handle where the LED illuminates.

If 'Drive-away' locking is active one pull of the door handle will centrally unlock both doors and a second pull will open that door (Refer to 'Drive-Away Locking', page 2.12).

If the door is left open the door puddle lamp will go out after 30 seconds.

Locking the Vehicle

Locking Using the Remote Transmitter

Ensure that both doors, the boot and the bonnet are closed. Stand within 5 m (16 ft.) of the vehicle. Point the remote transmitter towards the vehicle and press the button **once** to lock the doors, disable the boot and fuel flap release switches and set the vehicle alarm.

The vehicle will arm and deadlock after 25 seconds.

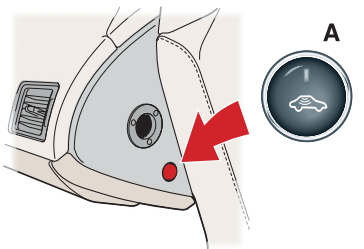
The direction indicators will flash once as the alarm is activated (Refer to 'Personalisation', page 2.23).

The front seats and door rear view mirror positions are memorised and will be recalled the next time the vehicle is opened using the same remote transmitter (Refer to 'Memory Seats', page 3.4).

If the vehicle is locked with the boot open, the vehicle will lock and arm but deadlocking, tilt (option) and interior movement (option) sensors will not activate. When closing the boot deadlocking, tilt (option) and interior movement (option) sensors will activate and the whole vehicle will be locked and armed.

Do not leave the vehicle keys and remote transmitter in the boot. If the boot is closed there will be no access to the contents of the boot.

If passengers are to remain in the vehicle after it has been locked using the remote transmitter, the reduced guard switch (A) must be activated before locking. This enables passengers to open the doors from inside the vehicle (Refer to 'Reduced Guard', page 2.14).



Locking Using the Ignition Key

Turn the ignition key towards the front of the vehicle and release to centrally lock the vehicle, disable the boot and fuel flap release switches.

The alarm will not be activated.

Automatic Re-locking

If the vehicle is locked by remote transmitter and then unlocked by remote transmitter but a door or the boot is not opened within 120 seconds, then the vehicle will automatically lock and arm again.

Master Lock Switch

Doors, fuel flap and boot release switches may be locked / unlocked by using the master lock switch. Press the switch to lock. Pull back on the switch to unlock.

One pull back on the master lock switch will also illuminate the LED in the door handles (for 10 seconds or until the door is opened). This may aid access for a passenger at night time.

If the vehicle is locked using the master lock switch, one pull of a door handle will centrally unlock the doors, a second pull of the door handle will open that door.



In the event of a vehicle accident the doors will automatically unlock.

The master lock switch will not operate if the vehicle has been locked from the outside using either the vehicle key or the remote transmitter.

Operation of the master lock switch will override 'Drive away locking'.

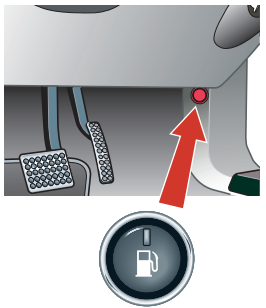
(Refer to 'Deadlocking', page 2.12).

Fuel Flap Release

Push the fuel flap release switch to open the fuel flap.

Unlock the vehicle using the remote transmitter, to enable the fuel flap release

The fuel flap release is disabled when the vehicle is locked using the remote transmitter or when the vehicle moves off.



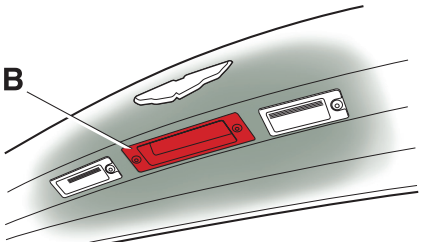
Boot Lid

Opening with the Remote Transmitter

If the vehicle is locked and armed the alarm system will be disabled and the direction indicators will flash twice (Refer to 'Personalisation', page 2.23). The doors will remain locked.

The boot can be opened in one of two ways using the remote transmitter.

If the button on the remote transmitter is pressed **once** the boot release catch will be enable. With the boot catch enabled press the boot switch (B) and raise the lid.



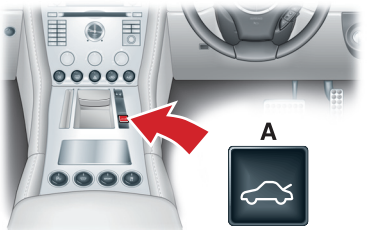
If the button on the remote transmitter is pressed **twice** (within three seconds) the boot catch will enable and the release the boot lid. Lift the lid.

Opening from Inside the Vehicle

Pull back on the boot release switch (A)

Volante Only: This switch becomes the roof open / close switch.

The boot catch will release. Lift the lid.



Closing

To close, lower the boot lid and ensure the boot catch engages.

The boot will not be locked.

Always ensure the boot is securely closed after use. The boot interior lamps will remain on for 30 minutes if the boot lid is left partially open.

Lock the boot by pressing the button on the remote transmitter (The direction indicators will flash once as the alarm is activated (Refer to 'Personalisation', page 2.23)).

Leaving the Boot Open While the Vehicle is Locked

To use the battery conditioner (Refer to 'Battery Conditioner', page 12.25) the boot has to be left open (boot lid down but not latched).

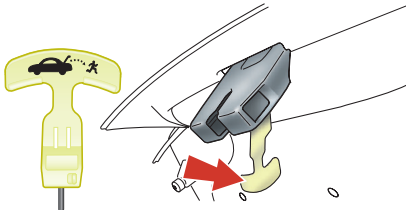
If the vehicle is locked, with the remote transmitter, while the boot is open, the vehicle will lock and arm (dealocking, tilt (option) and interior movement (option) sensors will not activate).

If the boot is then closed (latched) deadocking, tilt (option) and interior movement (option) sensors will activate and the whole vehicle will be locked and armed.

Do not leave the vehicle keys and remote transmitter in the boot. If the boot is closed there will be no access to the contents of the boot.

Boot Emergency Release

The boot can be opened from inside the boot by pulling the luminous emergency release handle.



Deadlocking

The vehicle will automatically deadlock after 25 seconds when arming the vehicle using the remote transmitter.

When the vehicle is deadlocked, the doors cannot be opened from the inside by pulling the interior door handle.

To open the doors activate the remote transmitter or use vehicle key.

If passengers are to remain in the vehicle after locking with the remote transmitter, the reduced guard switch must be activated before locking (Refer to 'Reduced Guard', page 2.14).

Drive-Away Locking

All Markets Except Japan

Drive away-locking (Auto Lock) is factory set to active (Refer to 'Personalisation', page 2.23).

Japanese Market Only

Drive away-locking (Auto Lock) is factory set to inactive (Refer to 'Personalisation', page 2.23).

When drive-away locking is active the central locking system will automatically engage as the vehicle moves off. Both doors and the boot will lock. This function prevents unwanted access to the vehicle when stopped at traffic lights etc.

One pull of a door handle will centrally unlock both doors, a second pull of the door handle will open that door.

In the event of a vehicle accident the doors will automatically unlock.

Approach Lighting

When approaching the vehicle the side lamps can be activated by pressing the ◯ button on the remote transmitter.

The time that the side lamps stay on is programmable (Refer to 'Personalisation', page 2.23).

Homesafe

When exiting the vehicle and the ignition key has been removed, flash the main beam (pull the LH stalk forwards and release without latching), to active Homesafe. The main beam and rear lamps will stay on for either 30, 60 or 90 seconds (Refer to 'Personalisation', page 2.23).

If Homesafe has been activated with the master lamp switch at position 3 (headlamps on), the main beam will remain on. Ensure the master lamp switch is at position 1 before exiting (Refer to 'Master Lamp Switch', page 4.16).

Alarm Cycle

Full Alarm Activation

A siren will sound for a 25 seconds cycle (ten cycles maximum).

Markets where audible sirens are permitted.

The direction indicators flash for 5 minutes after which the security system returns to the armed state.

Markets where visible alarm signals are permitted.

Doors and boot will remain locked throughout.

The alarm can be deactivated at any time during activation by pressing the button on the remote transmitter or by inserting the vehicle key into the ignition and turning to position 'II' (there is approximately a ten second delay before the alarm is cancelled).

Panic Alarm

Panic Alarm feature is not enabled for all markets.

This feature may be used to attract attention while inside or outside the vehicle.

To activate the panic alarm either:

- Press the button on the remote transmitter for a minimum of 3 seconds
- Press the button on the remote transmitter twice within 3 seconds

When activated the vehicle horn will sound for 25 seconds and the direction indicators will flash.

After the first three (3) seconds of activation, the panic alarm can be deactivated by pressing the ▲ button on the remote transmitter.

If the ▲ button is not pressed the panic alarm will cease to sound after 25 seconds.

Alarm Options

Interior Movement Sensor

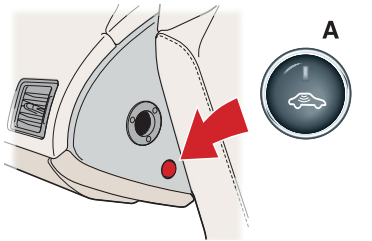
When the vehicle alarm system is activated the interior movement sensor will sense movement inside the vehicle. If movement is detected it will activate the vehicles alarm system (Refer to 'Reduced Guard', page 2.14).

Tilt Sensor

When the vehicle alarm system is activated the tilt sensor will sense if the vehicle is tilted i.e., if the vehicle is being raised on a jack. If vehicle tilt is detected it will activate the vehicles alarm system (Refer to 'Reduced Guard', page 2.14).

Reduced Guard

When guard reduction is activated deadlocking, interior movement (option) and tilt (option) sensors are disabled. This will allow passengers to open the doors from the inside by pulling the interior door handle and passengers or animals to be left in the vehicle without activating the security system.



If passengers are to remain in the vehicle after it has been locked using the remote transmitter, the reduced guard switch (A) must be activated before locking. This will allow passengers to open the doors from inside the vehicle.

With the ignition key in the ‘0’ or ‘I’ position or within 60 seconds of removing the ignition key the reduced guard switch can be activated.

The ignition key must have turned from position ‘II’ first.

The switch will show red when reduced guard is active.

Reduced guard remains active until the ignition key is inserted and turned to position ‘II’.

Remote Transmitter

Battery Replacement

When the remote transmitter battery is low the warning ‘Remote Battery Low Voltage’ will show in the message centre right.

Do not press the operating buttons during battery replacement. If the coding is disrupted, it will be necessary to have your Aston Martin Dealer reprogramme the remote transmitter.

Take care not to damage upper electrical contacts in battery compartment.

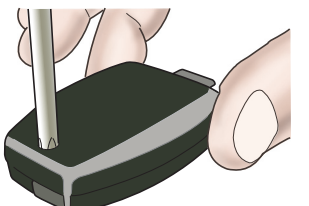
Battery type: CR2032 three volt battery x1.

Tools required: Allen Key (2 mm)
Small Phillips Screwdriver.

1. Remove the small grub screw (allen key head) and withdraw the key holder.
2. Remove a second grub screw and then part the two halves of the remote transmitter.







3. Replace the battery (+ve side down).

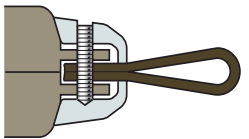


Finger marks will reduce battery life. Avoid touching the flat surfaces of the battery and wipe the battery clean before installation.

4. Re-assemble the remote transmitter.

   Ensure that the grub screw correctly secures the leather key holder.

5. Test the alarm system 'arm' and 'disarm', using the remote transmitter from a range of approximately 5 m (16 ft.).



Passive Anti-Theft System (PATS)

PATS is a fully automatic engine immobiliser.

In the event of loss of one of the ignition keys, duplicate ignition keys can be created and programmed from the other ignition key by your Aston Martin Dealer.

Two coded ignition keys are provided with the vehicle. These ignition keys fit both the door locks and the ignition lock.



To ensure a trouble-free signal exchange between the ignition key and the vehicle, **do not** cover the ignition key head with any metal object (e.g. metal ignition key tags or another ignition key).

Starting the Engine

When the alarm system is disarmed and the vehicle ignition key is turned in the ignition lock, the PATS controller sends a signal to the ignition key. The ignition key must respond with a valid ignition key code before engine start will be enabled. If a valid code is received, the ignition system will operate normally.

If the ignition key code is not received, or is invalid, engine start remains disabled.

PATS Status

The PATS system state is shown by the red lamp on the instrument cluster (A).



Ignition	Action (Valid code)
Ignition turned 'On'	Lamp illuminates for three seconds.
Ignition turned 'Off'	Lamp will flash.
Ignition turned 'Off' and ignition key removed.	Lamp will flash periodically for five minutes or until the vehicle is locked using the remote transmitter.

Fault Mode

If the status lamp continues flashing when the ignition is turned on, the vehicle will remain immobilised.

Should this situation arise try turning the ignition off then on. If this is unsuccessful try the other ignition key. If successful, source a replacement for the faulty ignition key. If problems persist with both ignition keys, consult your Aston Martin Dealer.

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

Garage Door Opener (Option)

Available with Auto Dimming mirror only (Option)

The Garage Door Opener (Homelink® Universal Transceiver) operating buttons and transceiver are located in the interior rear view mirror.

The transceiver can be programmed to transmit the radio frequencies of up to three different transmitters used to activate garage doors, entry gates, home lighting, security systems, or other radio frequency operated devices.

A full list of radio frequency operated devices can be either obtained via the HomeLink Hot-line or through the HomeLink compatibility list which is provided on the HomeLink website.

For information, or for assistance, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

Alternatively contact Homelink directly at www.homelink.com or call the HomeLink Hot-line:

Toll-free: 008000 0466 354 65

or

+49 6838 907-277 (In certain countries difficulties may be experienced trying to reach the toll-free number by some providers).

⚠ Warning ⚠

Do not use the transceiver with any garage door opening system that lacks the safety stop and reverse feature as required by safety standards. A garage door opening system which cannot detect an object, signalling the door to stop and reverse, does not meet current safety standards. Using a garage door opening system without these features increases risk of serious injury or death.

⚠ Warning ⚠

When programming the transceiver to a garage door opening system, make sure that people, the vehicle and objects are out of the way to prevent potential harm or damage as the gate or garage door will activate during the programming.

Keep the original transmitter for future use or programming procedures if, for example, you purchase a new vehicle.

This device may suffer from interference if operated in the vicinity of a mobile or fixed station transmitter. This interference is likely to affect the hand-held transmitter as well as the in-car transceiver.

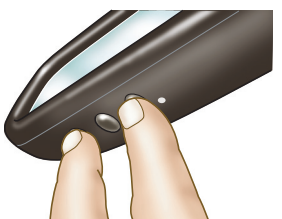
The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment. Such modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Programming

Step 1 erases all programming. It only requires completing if programming Homelink for the first time or when erasing all existing programming. It does not have to be followed to program the other HomeLink buttons.

The HomeLink buttons can be reprogrammed individually but not individually erased. Step 1 must be completed to erase all programming.

1. Press and hold the two outer HomeLink buttons, releasing only when the HomeLink LED begins to flash after 20 seconds.



All three buttons are now cleared. The HomeLink system is now in setting mode.

As a security precaution ensure that all programming is erased in the HomeLink system before selling this vehicle.

2. Hold the original remote control of the device to be programmed at a distance of 10-30 cm away from the HomeLink transmitter unit keeping the LED in view all the time.

The distance between the remote control and the transmitter unit depends on the system being programmed. You may require several attempts at different distances. Maintain each setting position for at least 15 seconds before trying out another.

3. Using both hands, simultaneously push the remote control button and the desired button (1, 2 or 3).



4. The LED will flash, first slowly and then rapidly. When the LED flashes rapidly, release both buttons. The rapid flashing light indicates successful programming of the new frequency signal.

Operation

The vehicle should be within the operating range of the gate or garage door opener and the ignition should be switched on.

The HomeLink system operates the garage door opener (or other device) in exactly the same way as the original remote control.

When you have programmed the HomeLink system, press the appropriate button 1, 2, or 3 on the control panel to activate the garage door opener.



The LED will light up when the button on the control panel is pressed.

For convenience, the original remote control of the device may also be used at any time.

In the case of a standard code, the HomeLink LED is constantly illuminated throughout the transmission process. For use with compatible systems, no further action is necessary.

If HomeLink now does not operate the garage door opener (or other device), this may be because the original remote control has a rolling code feature. Refer to 'Rolling Code Synchronisation' page 21.

Rolling Code Synchronisation

Check, by going through the following steps, whether or not the garage door opener (or other device) is equipped with a rolling code feature.

- Look in the garage door opener manual for clarification
- The remote control appears to program HomeLink but HomeLink does not operate the garage door opener
- Press and hold down the programmed HomeLink button
  With a rolling code system, the HomeLink LED flashes quickly for a short time and then stays on constantly for two seconds. This pattern repeats itself for up to 20 seconds.

If HomeLink was programmed with a rolling code system, then after the end of the programming period it must be synchronised with this system again before it will function properly.

Follow the instructions below for Rolling Code Synchronisation (the procedure will take less time with a second person to help).

The vehicle must be within operating range of the garage door opener and the ignition should be at position 'II'. Make sure you comply with the safety instructions even when synchronising the rolling code.

1. Locate the Training button (programming button) on the garage door opener motor head unit. Exact location and colour of the button may vary by gate or garage door opener brand (refer to the operating instructions of the garage door opener 'Training additional remote controls').

2. Press the Training button (programming button) on the garage door opener motor head unit (which will usually activate a 'training' light).

Following step 2, there are typically 30 seconds in which to initiate step 3.

3. Firmly press and release the programmed HomeLink button. Press and release the HomeLink button a second time to complete the training process. (Some garage door openers may require this procedure a third time to complete the training).

The garage door opener should now recognise the HomeLink signal and activate when the HomeLink button is pressed.

The remaining two buttons may now be programmed if this has not previously been done. Refer to 'Programming' page 19.

Reprogramming a Single HomeLink® Button

If a HomeLink button has been programmed to activate a device, and you now wish to use this button to operate a different device, proceed as follows. This procedure will erase the existing programming of the respective HomeLink button.

1. Press the appropriate HomeLink button 1, 2, or 3 which requires reprogramming and keep holding it for about 20 seconds until the LED starts flashing slowly. Do not release until step 4 has been completed.
2. When the LED begins to flash slowly (after approximately 20 seconds), hold the remote control of the device you wish to train approx. 10-30 cm away from the HomeLink transmitter unit - keeping the LED in view.

The distance between the remote control and the HomeLink transmitter unit depends on the system being learned. You may require several attempts at different distances. Maintain each setting position for at least 15 seconds before trying out another.

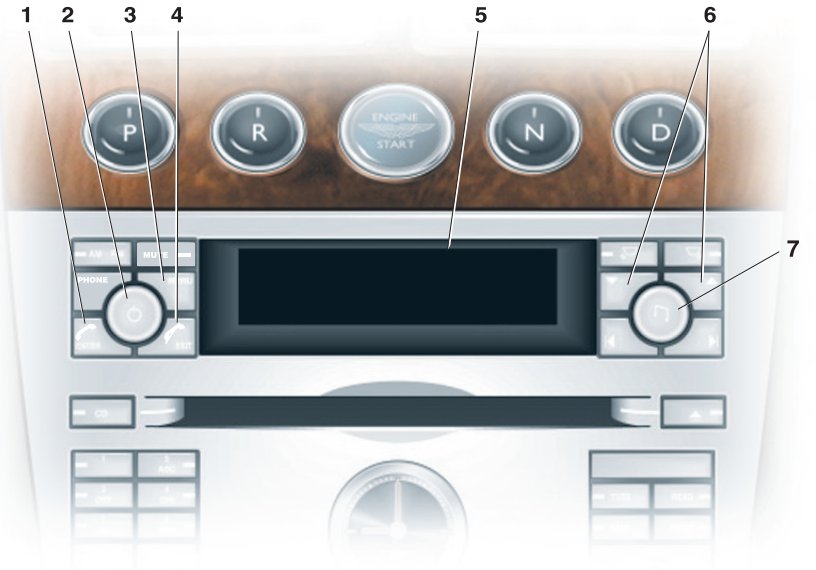
3. Now activate (press) the remote control and keep it pressed.
4. The HomeLink LED will flash, first slowly and then rapidly. When the diode begins to flash rapidly, release both buttons.

Personalisation

A number of remote transmitter functions can be personalised.

The functions are set by using the Infotainment screen.

ENTER	***(1) Enter -*** Select in the menu, activate a selection.
	(2) On / ***Off -*** Infotainment centre On / Off
MENU	***(3) Menu -*** Opens the main menu.
EXIT	***(4) Exit - Scroll back in the menu, cancel a selection. -***
	(5) Screen - Presents options, menus and information.



Menu



(6) Menu Navigation - Scroll up or down in the menus



(7) Menu Navigation - Alternative method for scrolling through the menus. Turn left or right to scroll up / down in the menus.

Selection

With the ignition at position 'II' and the Infotainment centre on, press **Menu.** Select Car Settings...

From Car Settings... scroll to the required setting. Press **Enter**. Use the **Scroll** buttons to make a selection and press **Enter** to accept.

Car Settings...

- Lock confirm. light
  - On* / Off
- Unlock confirm. light
  - On* / Off
- Doors auto lock
  - On / Off*
- Doors unlock...
  - All doors**
  - Driver door, then all
- Approach light duration...
  - 30* / 60 / 90 seconds
- Homesafe light duration...
  - 30* / 60 / 90 seconds
- Information...
  - VIN number...

* Default setting

** Market area dependant

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

Before Driving

Contents

Checks Before Driving 3.2
Seat Comfort Control 3.2
Memory Seats 3.4
Seat Back Release 3.6
Steering Wheel 3.6
Interior Mirrors 3.7
Door Mirrors 3.8
Restraints System 3.10
Seat Belts 3.12
Airbags 3.16
Child Safety 3.19
Child Seats 3.20
Automatic Locking Retractors (ALR) 3.21
Deployable Rollbars (Volante) 3.22
Interior Storage 3.23
Accessory Socket 3.24
Ashtray and Cigar Lighter (Option) 3.25
Electric Windows 3.26
Reading Lamps 3.27
Coat Hook 3.27
Umbrella 3.27

Checks Before Driving

Inspect your vehicle to make sure that everything is according to the information and specifications in this Owner's Guide.

Outside the vehicle:

- Visually check the road wheels, nuts and tyres
- Check that all windows, mirrors and lamps are clear and unobstructed
- Check that the boot, bonnet and fuel filler flap are securely closed
- Check the operation of all lamps

Once you are in the vehicle:

- Check that the doors are securely closed
- Check that the seat, mirrors and steering wheel adjustments are correct
- Check that all gauges and indicators are reading correctly (Refer to 'Controls', page 4.1)
- Check that the seat backs are in an upright position and that the seat latch is engaged
- Check that all occupants have fastened their seat belts

Seat Comfort Control

⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not attempt to adjust the seat whilst driving.

The driver and passenger seats can be adjusted to the optimum sitting and driving positions.

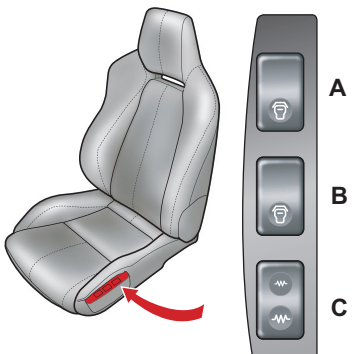
The seats are normally adjusted while the ignition key is in position 'I' or 'II'. They can also be adjusted within 10 minutes of a door being unlocked with the key or remote control. If the door is closed and the ignition key is not yet in the ignition, or is in the '0' position, adjustments can be made within 40 seconds of the door being closed.

Seat Adjustment

The ignition must be at position 'II' before the heated seat and lumbar support can be operated.

(A) Lumber Support (Lower) - Press forwards or rearwards to increase or reduce the lower lumbar support.

(B) Lumber Support (Upper) - Press forwards or rearwards to increase or reduce the upper lumbar support.



(C) Heated Seat - Press to the rear for the lower heat setting, press to the front for the higher heat setting. A LED shows which heat level is active. To switch 'Off' press to the centre position (no LED illuminated).

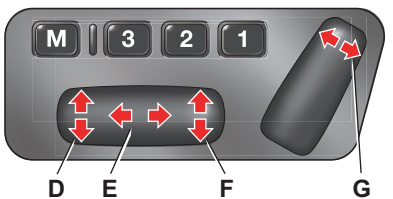
When making seat adjustments, i.e. moving the seat base rearwards or raising / lowering the seat base, the seat back will motor forwards whenever it approaches trim panels located behind it. If the seat back is tilted backwards the seat base will move forwards if the seat back approaches trim panels.

(D) - Raise or lower the front of the seat.

(E) - Move the seat forwards or rearwards.

(F) - Raise or lower the rear of the seat.

(G) - Increase or decrease the angle of the seat back.



Memory Seats

The position of the driver and passenger seats can be memorised and recalled. Three different driving position profiles can be entered in the memory. The memory position of the driver's seat also includes both door rear view mirrors.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Ensure that there is nothing in front of, behind, or under the seat during adjustment.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Ensure that none of the rear seat passengers will be trapped.

⚠ Warning ⚠
To avoid injury, ensure that children do not play with the switches.

⚠ Warning ⚠
If the seat accidentally begins to move, press any seat control button to stop the seat.

Setting a Preset Position

⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not attempt to adjust the seat whilst driving.

A driving position will only be memorised if the ignition switch is in position 'I'

1. Adjust the seat and the door rear view mirrors to the desired position.
   (Refer to 'Seat Comfort Control', page 3.2).
   (Refer to 'Door Mirrors', page 3.8).

When making seat adjustments, i.e. moving the seat base rearwards or raising / lowering the seat base, the seat back will motor forwards whenever it approaches trim panels located behind it. If the seat back is tilted backwards the seat base will move forwards if the seat back approaches trim panels.

2. Push both the memory button (M) and the desired setting button (1, 2 or 3) simultaneously, then release, to memorise the configuration.

By repeating these steps and pressing an unused button (1, 2 or 3), a second and third driving position can be stored in the memory.



When making adjustments to a set driving position, reset the new position in the same memory channel. The previous memory is erased when a new driving position is entered

Recalling a Memorised Position

Once in the seat press and hold button 1, 2 or 3 (depending on which position required) until all movement is stopped. The seat and door mirrors (driver's seat only) move to the programmed position. If the button is released all movement will stop, press and hold again to continue movement.

Using the Remote Transmitter

When the vehicle is locked using the remote transmitter, the seats and door rear view mirrors will remember their positions. The next time the vehicle is opened using the same remote transmitter the seats and door rear view mirrors will move to the memorised position.

Each time the vehicle is locked using a remote transmitter the seats and mirrors position will be recalled when opening the vehicle with the same remote transmitter.

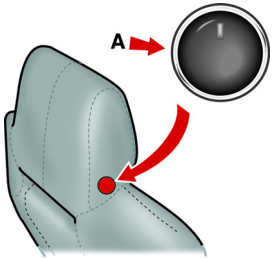
Emergency Stop

If the seat accidentally begins to move, press any seat control button to stop the seat.

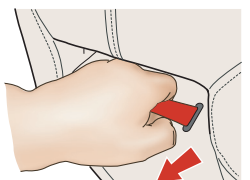
ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN

Seat Back Release

Press and release the button (A) to release the seat back then manually move the seat back forwards.



In the unlikely event of power failure a manual release strap is provided in the seat back. Pull and hold the strap to release the seat back and then move the seat back forward.

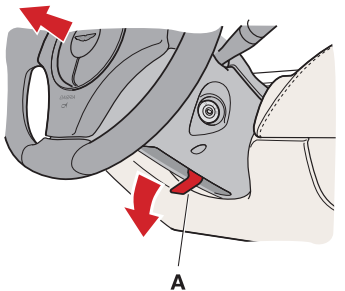


Steering Wheel

Rake and Reach

Rake and Reach are adjusted by using the release lever (A).

⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not adjust steering wheel whilst driving.



Pull the release lever downwards and manoeuvre the steering wheel to the required position.

Hold the steering wheel in the required position and lock it by pulling the release lever up.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Ensure that the steering column is fully locked in position. The rake and reach release lever must be fully up, in line with the steering column.

Interior Mirrors

Rear View Mirror

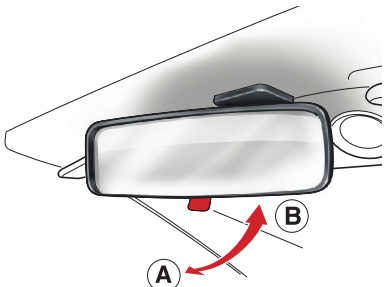
Adjust on its ball mounting until a satisfactory rear view is obtained.

Manual Dip

Use to avoid dazzle from headlamps of following vehicles.

(A) **-** Normal position.

(B) **-** Dipped position.



Automatic Dimming (Option)

The rear view mirror will dim automatically if the glare from the headlights of following vehicles becomes too bright.

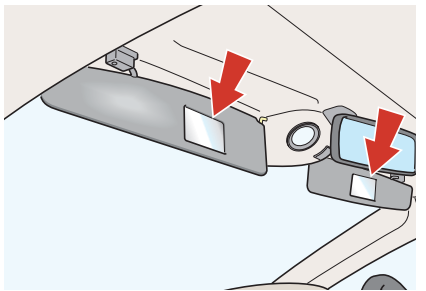


The mirror will return to normal view as unwanted glare reduces to an acceptable level.

If the mirror is dimmed when reverse gear is selected the mirror will revert to normal view.

Vanity Mirror

A vanity mirror is located in each sun visor.



Door Mirrors

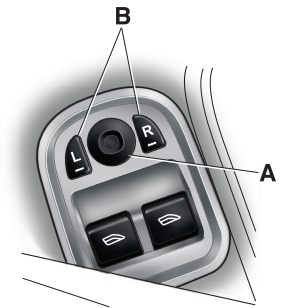
The ignition must at position 'I' or 'II' before the door mirrors can be adjusted.

To adjust the door mirrors select the left or right mirror (B).

An amber LED indicates the active mirror.

Then move the joystick (A) up / down / left / right to adjust the selected mirror.

When the heated rear windscreen is activated the heaters in the door mirrors will activate for 6.5 minutes.



Power Fold Door Mirrors

The 'Power Fold Mirror' function rotates the door mirror assemblies until folded flat against the doors.

To move to the:

(1) Fold Position - Switch the ignition to position 'I' or 'II'. Press down and release both the left and right hand mirror select switches (B) together. The mirrors will motor to the 'fold-in' position.

(2) Driving Position - Switch the ignition to position 'I' or 'II'. Press down and release both the left and right hand mirror select switches (B) together. The mirrors will motor to the driving position.

Door mirror vibration can occur if the mirrors have been moved manually (folded / unfolded), either intentionally or accidentally. To reset the linkage operate the power fold function once to fold / unfold the mirrors.

Memory Mirrors

The position of the driver and passenger door mirrors and seats can be memorised and recalled.

Details on memory door mirrors can be found in Memory Seats (Refer to 'Memory Seats', page 3.4).

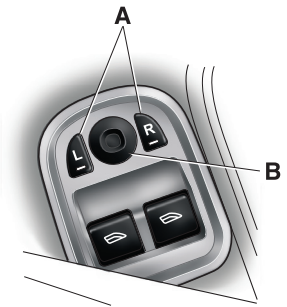
Reversing Dip

This function provides a superior view of the rear of the vehicle while reversing.

When reverse gear is selected press down and release the mirror joystick (B), this will lower the passenger mirror to preset position 1.

If the mirror requires further lowering, press and release the joystick again.

The mirror will move one preset position per movement of the mirror joystick.



If the mirror is lowered to far, press up and release the mirror joystick.

The mirror will return to driving view when reverse gear is de-selected or when either mirror button (A) is pressed.

The mirror will remain in reverse dip mode as long as no door mirror LED is illuminated (A). Press either mirror button to leave reverse dip mode.

This function can be configured to either:

- Driver mirror only
- Passenger mirror only (default)
- Driver and Passenger mirrors
- None

Refer to your Aston Martin Dealer.

Auto Fold

When this vehicle is locked using the remote transmitter the mirrors will automatically fold in flat against the doors.

They will un-fold once the ignition key has been inserted into the ignition.

If the mirrors have been folded using the 'Power Fold Mirror' function then the mirrors will remain folded until placed in the driving position using the Power Fold Mirror' function again.

Refer to your Aston Martin Dealer to enable / disable this function.

Restraints System

The Restraints System provides an improved overall level of frontal crash protection to front seat occupants and is designed to help further reduce the risk of airbag-related injuries. The system is able to analyse different occupant conditions and crash severity before activating the appropriate safety devices to help better protect a range of occupants in a variety of frontal crash situations.

A collection of crash sensors provide information to the Restraints Control Module (RCM). During a crash, the RCM may / may not activate the safety belt pretensioners and / or either none, one, or both stages of the dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints based on crash severity and conditions.

The fact that the pretensioners or airbags did not activate for both front seat occupants in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system.

Rather, it means the system determined the accident conditions (crash severity, belt usage, etc.) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices. Front airbags are designed to activate only in frontal and near-frontal collisions, not rollovers, side-impacts, or rear-impacts unless the collision causes sufficient longitudinal deceleration.

The system consists of:

- Front safety belts with pretensioners, load limiting systems, and safety belt usage sensors
- Driver and front passenger dual-stage airbags
- Driver and front passenger side airbags
- Driver and Passenger seat position sensors
- Crash severity sensors
- Restraints Control Module (RCM)
- Restraint system warning light 

Dual-Stage Airbags

When activated, the airbags will deploy at either a normal or reduced level of inflation, depending on crash severity. Various sensors determine the direction and severity of an impact. The system analyses this information then deploys the appropriate airbags only.

Seat Position Sensors

Seat position sensors determine the position of the driver and passenger seats. The information is used to tailor the airbag deployment activation depending upon seat position.

The system is designed to help protect smaller drivers sitting close to the driver airbag by providing a lower airbag output level.

Pre-tensioner and Load Limiting Systems

The driver and passenger seat belts are equipped with pre-tensioner and load limiting systems.

In most moderate frontal or near frontal accidents, the front airbag and pre-tensioner systems will deploy simultaneously.

In some moderate frontal or near frontal accidents, only the pre-tensioner system will deploy.

The pre-tensioners take up slack in the seat belts as the airbags are expanding. The load limiting system releases belt webbing in a controlled manner to reduce belt force on the occupant's chest.

Front Safety Belt Usage Sensors

Front safety belt usage sensors detect whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts are fastened.

The information is used to tailor the airbag deployment and safety belt pre-tensioner activation depending upon safety belt usage.

Crash Severity Sensors

Crash severity sensors enhance the ability to detect the severity of an impact. Positioned up front, they provide valuable information early in the crash event on the severity of the impact. This allows the Restraints System to distinguish between different levels of crash severity and modify the deployment strategy of the dual-stage airbags and safety belt pretensioners.

Restraints Control Module

The Restraints Control Module (RCM) monitors its own internal circuits and the circuits for the airbag supplemental restraints, crash sensor(s), safety belt pretensioners, front safety belt buckle sensors, and the driver seat position sensor.

In addition, the RCM also monitors the restraints warning light in the instrument cluster  .

Determining if the System is Operational

 The warning lamp in the instrument cluster indicates the condition of the system.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:

- The readiness light will either flash or stay illuminated
- The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after the ignition is turned on

If either of these conditions occur, even intermittently, have the restraint system serviced at your Aston Martin Dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision.

Seat Belts

Aston Martin strongly recommend the use of seat belts

⚠ Warning ⚠
Wearing your seat belt is crucial to your safety. Not wearing a seat belt increases chance of serious injury or death in the event of an accident.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Be sure that you and your passengers always fasten their seat belts and use them properly even though airbags are provided.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Reclining the seat back decreases protection provided by the seat belt in the event of a crash. Adjust the seat back to an upright position.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Make sure that the seat back is locked in place. Otherwise it could move forward in the event of a sudden stop or crash and cause injury.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis, chest and shoulders; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Never place shoulder portion of belt under your arm or behind your back.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Always remove from your pockets rigid or breakable objects, i.e. spectacles or a mobile phone, which could be trapped under seat belts, possibly causing injury in the event of an accident.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Expectant mothers should seek medical advice on the most appropriate way to wear the seat belt.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Seat belts must be kept clean so that the retractor works correctly. Ensure that belt webbing is not twisted, looped, frayed or obstructed in any way. If in doubt about condition or operation of seat belt installation, have it checked by your Aston Martin Dealer.

⚠ Warning ⚠
No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent seat belt adjusting devices from operating, or prevent seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack. Never install accessories on your seat belts.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

⚠ Warning ⚠
It is essential to replace the entire seat belt assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the seat belt assembly is not obvious.

This vehicle is installed with four, three point, inertia reel seat belts.

Items 1, 2 and 3 indicate the three points of the seat belt. Item 3 is also the location of the belt buckle.



The inertia belt reels will automatically tension the belts to provide security with comfort. In the event of a collision or during severe braking, the belt reels will lock.



* A lamp on the instrument panel will illuminate for 6 seconds when the ignition is at position 'II' if the driver's seat belt is not fastened. An audible warning will sound at the same time.

* Market area dependant

Seat Belt Fastening

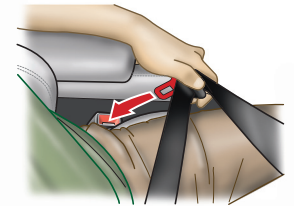
When parked on an incline, the seat belt may lock as it is withdrawn. This is not a fault. If the mechanism locks, release the belt tension and then pull the belt very gently to avoid operation of the inertia lock.

Pull out the seat belt, drawing the tongue over the shoulder and across the chest.



Push the tongue into the belt buckle latch until a positive click is heard.

Pull upwards on the diagonal belt to ensure secure latching and to remove all slack from the belt.



Finally, double check that the lap belt is installed snugly, low down across the hips, and that there are no twists.



If it is necessary for an occupant to adjust their seat or seating position during a journey, the belt tension might be disturbed. The occupant should therefore (as soon as it is safe to do so) gently pull down the shoulder run of the seat belt to create some slack and then immediately release it to re-tension the belt for the new seating position.

Seat Belt Unfastening

Depress the button on the buckle. While holding the seat belt tongue allow the belt to slowly retract to it's stored position.



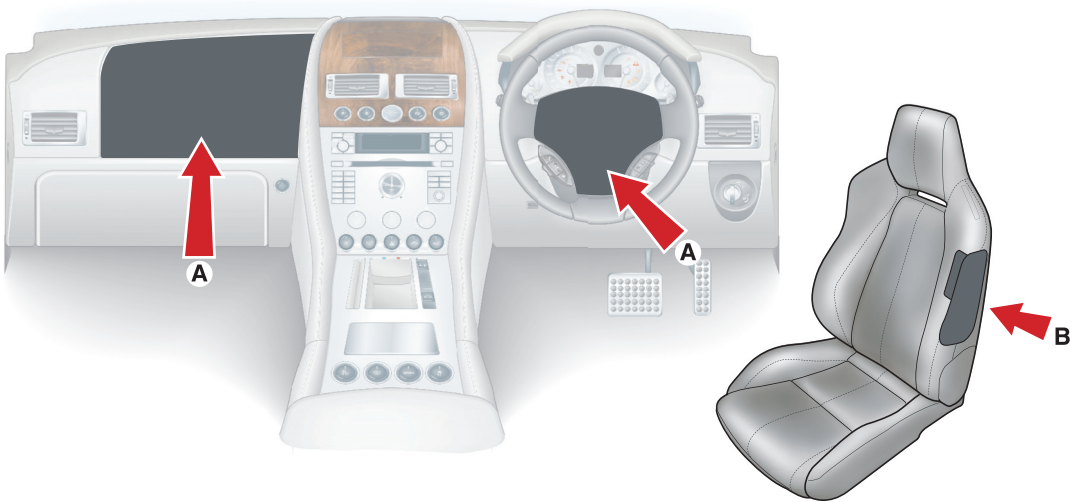
Seat Belt Fastening (Child)

Ensure there is no slack in the webbing and the restraint fits the child snugly across the rib cage and hips. These are the parts of the body most able to take the force of impact.

The lap strap should pass across the top of the child's thighs, bearing on the pelvis, not on the abdominal area.

Airbags

Supplemental Restraints System (SRS)



The vehicle is equipped with driver and passenger airbags. The airbags and seat belt pretensioners (Refer to 'Pre-tensioner and Load Limiting Systems', page 3.11) are electrically controlled by an advanced restraints system.

The front airbags (A) only deploy in a serious front collision. The side airbags (B (one airbag in each front seat)) only deploy according to which side has been impacted in a serious side collision.

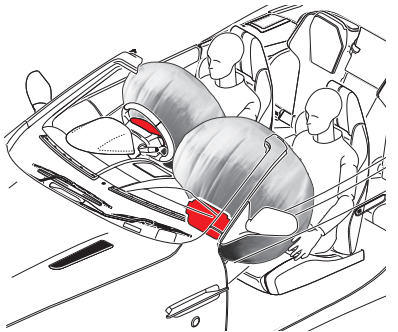
The purpose of the driver and passenger airbags is to provide **additional** protection for the front seat occupants in the event of a serious impact (front or side impacts). The airbags are supplementary to the seat belts.

Important airbag safety labels are located on the sun visors and on the end of the instrument panel (passenger side). Ensure that the instructions on these labels are read and complied with prior to driving the vehicle.

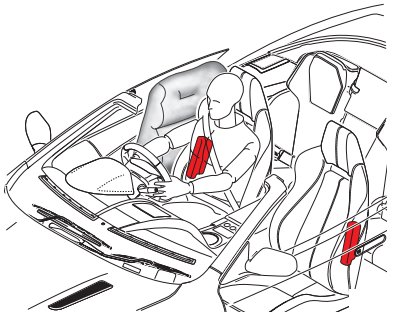
Airbag Deployment

Airbags inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is therefore a risk of death or serious injury such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained by seat belts or are not sitting correctly when the airbags deploy. The risk of injury from a deploying airbag is greatest close to the trim covering the airbag.

Front Airbags - on a frontal impact.



Side Airbags - on a side impact (where the impact is on that side only).



The whole sequence of events from sensing the impact to full inflation of the airbag takes place in a fraction of a second.

The noise and gas associated with the deployment of the airbags is not injurious to health.

⚠ Warning ⚠

Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident.

⚠ Warning ⚠

All occupants, including the driver, should always wear seat belts, whether or not an airbag is provided, to decrease the risk of injury or death in the event of a crash.

⚠ Warning ⚠

No objects whatsoever should be attached to the centre cover of the steering wheel or the passenger fascia panel. Such objects could cause harm if the vehicle is in a collision severe enough to cause the airbags to deploy.

Do not change, modify or tamper with the steering wheel, passenger side fascia or any other part of the airbag system. Such actions could disable the system or cause inadvertent airbag deployment.

The system will not deploy in the event of minor frontal or side impacts, such as contacts when parking. The airbag system is not designed to protect against rear impacts.

Any work on the airbag system must only be carried out by an Aston Martin Dealer.

Child Seats and Passenger Airbags

⚠ Warning ⚠

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it.

Aston Martin strongly recommend not to install any child seat on the front passenger seat of this vehicle.

In the event of a serious frontal or side collision the vehicle airbag system is designed to deploy, to provide **additional** protection for the front seat occupants.

If a forward facing child seat is to be used in the front passenger seat, follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions to secure the child seat and **move the passenger seat to its rearmost and lowest position**.

Child Safety

A child, regardless of age, should always be restrained when travelling in a vehicle.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not allow children to travel in a vehicle without restraint. An appropriate child seat or harness should always be used.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Each seat belt assembly must be used by only one occupant. It is dangerous to put a seat belt around a child being carried on the occupants lap.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Accident statistics show that children are generally safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat. A suitable child restraint, properly installed and used, provides the highest degree of protection for infants and small children in most accident situations.

Ensure that an installed child seat does not rest against the door, that the child sits properly in the seat and does not lean close to, or against, the door or window.

Child Seats and Passenger Airbags

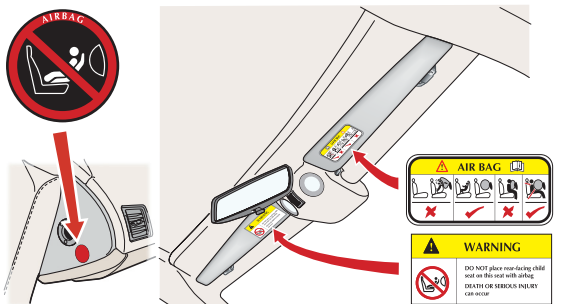
⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it.

Aston Martin strongly recommend not to install any child seat on the front passenger seat of this vehicle.

In the event of a serious frontal or side collision the vehicle airbag system is designed to deploy, to provide **additional** protection for the front seat occupants.

If a forward facing child seat is to be used in the front passenger seat, follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions to secure the child seat and **move the passenger seat to its rearmost and lowest position**.

The following warning labels (market area dependant) are located on the sun visors and on the end of the dash (passenger side).



Child Seats

Aston Martin **does not** recommend any child seat for this vehicle.

Use of Child Seats - Seat Belt Installation

Mass Group *		Seating Position	
		Front Passenger	Second Row Outboard
'0'	Up to 10kg (0-9 months)	X	X
'0+'	Up to 13kg (0-18 months)	X	X
'I'	9 to 18kg (9 months to 4 years	X	X
'II'	15 to 25kg (4 to 12 years)	X	X
'III'	(22 to 36 kg (4 to 12 years))	X	X
* As indicated on the child safety seat packaging)			

Supplied under EC Directive 77/541.

Key

U – Suitable for 'universal' category restraints approved for this mass group.

X – Seat position not suitable for children in the mass group.

* – Unsuitable for use with many child restraints due to limited space.

Consult with local manufacturers of smaller forward facing restraint and booster cushions. These manufacturers can supply you with advice on the safety of their particular child restraints, the position that they recommend, and also advice on installation instructions.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not seat a child aged 12 or younger, or weighing 36 kg (79.4 lb.) or less in the car without an appropriate child seat or booster cushion.

Use of Child Safety Seats

An infant or child that is not properly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash. Seat belts are designed for adults and larger children; infants and smaller children must be restrained in an approved child safety seat.

Children could be endangered in a crash if their child restraints are not properly secured in the vehicle.

If you choose to use a child safety seat, follow the manufacturers instructions. Never hold a baby or child on your lap while riding in the vehicle.

Check the seat manufacturers instructions for proper use and installation – use the correct size seat and properly secure the seat in the vehicle in accordance with the manufacturers instructions. Be sure to read and follow the 'Installation and Use Instructions' provided with the child seat.

Automatic Locking Retractors (ALR)

This vehicle has Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) seat belts installed to the front passenger seat and the rear seats.

This system is designed to securely hold child seats. The ALR system temporarily locks the seat belt that is securing a child seat.

⚠ Warning ⚠

Always follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Not following the child-seat manufacturer's instructions when installing the child seat is dangerous.

ALR Operation

Gently pull out the relevant inertia reel seat belt until fully extended. The ALR system will only engage at the maximum extension point of the seat belt.

Thread the belt tongue through the child seat as instructed by the child seat manufacturer. Engage the tongue into the belt buckle.

Adjust the tongue position on the belt if necessary to ensure that the lower belt run is tight and then allow the upper run of the seat belt to fully retract until the child seat is securely held. The ALR system will be heard 'clicking' as the seat belt retracts. When fully retracted, pull down on the upper run of the belt to check that the ALR lock has engaged.

To remove the child seat, release the belt as normal and allow it to retract through the seat frame.

When parked on an incline, the belt may lock as it is withdrawn. This is not a fault. If the mechanism locks, release the belt tension and then pull the belt very gently to avoid operation of the inertia lock.

The ALR system will disengage when the belt is fully retracted. The belt may then be worn when required as a normal inertia reel belt. Once the ALR is disengaged, the belt must be fully extended to re-engage the system on the next occasion that a child seat is installed.

Deployable Rollbars (Volante)

⚠ Warning ⚠

Do not place any objects on the top of the deployable rollbar covers behind the rear seat backs.

⚠ Warning ⚠

Do not allow any person to sit on the deployable rollbar covers at any time.

⚠ Warning ⚠

Do not attempt to service or modify the deployable rollbar system.

⚠ Warning ⚠

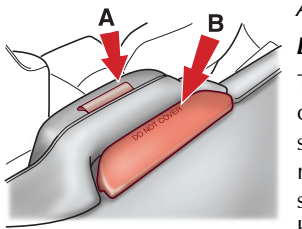
Do not attempt to reset the deployable rollbar system if it deploys.

⚠ Warning ⚠

If the roof is closed and the deployable rollbars deploy they will break through the rear glass.

Warning Labels

The following warning labels are located on the deployable rollbar system,



A **- 'Rollbar'**

B **- 'Do Not Cover'**

The deployable rollbar system comprises an electronic roll sensor unit integrated into the main crash sensor and two 'U' shaped roll bars, concealed behind the rear seat.

(Refer to 'Deployable Rollbars', page 6.10)

If the deployable rollbar system has been deployed, proceed to your nearest Aston Martin Dealer to check for any damage and to reset the system.

Interior Storage

Glovebox.



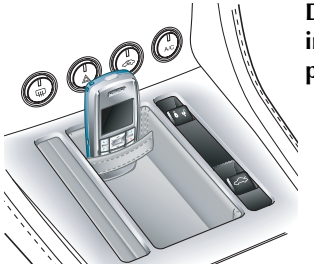
Trinket box
(Non smoking option).
Lift the lid to open.



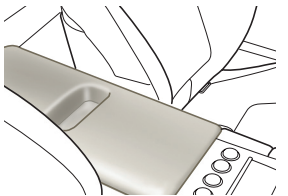
Trinket box, including mobile phone pocket.

Coin / credit card holder.

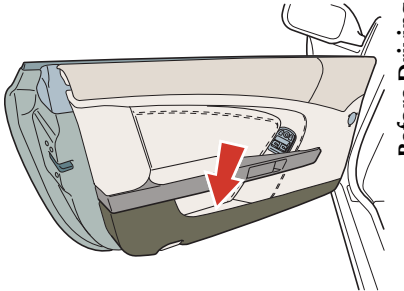
(Automatic transmission only).

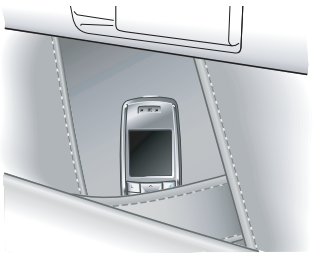


Rear Trinket Box

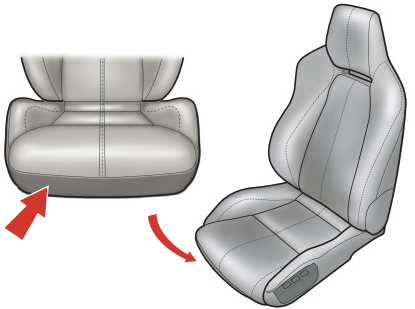


Door pockets, including mobile phone pocket.





Seat Pockets.

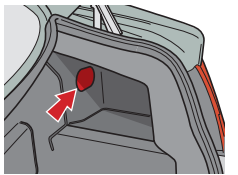


Accessory Socket

⚠ Warning ⚠
Damage to electrical circuits will result if more than 10 amps is drawn from the accessory socket. Only connect accessories which are designed for use in a motor vehicle.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Prolonged use of accessory socket when vehicle is stationary may seriously discharge battery.

An accessory socket is mounted in the boot RH side wall and may be used to power any 12 volt vehicle accessory requiring a current of less than 10 amps. The boot mounted accessory socket is a constant live.



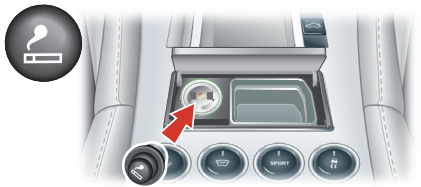
On vehicles installed with the non-smoking option a second accessory socket is provided in the trinket tray.

Read the manufacturer's instructions and ensure that you do not connect any device which would exceed current rating of accessory socket.



Ashtray and Cigar Lighter (Option)

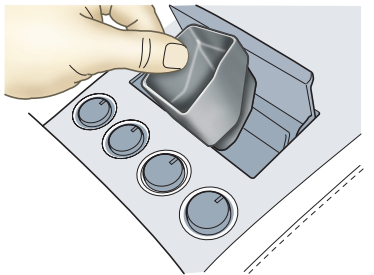
The cigar lighter may be used when the ignition switch is in positions 'I' or 'II'.



Push down until it clicks. The lighter will pop up when ready for use.

⚠ Warning ⚠
The cigar lighter is heated to 'Red Heat' when in use. Take care to avoid burns. Do not allow children to play with the cigar lighter.

Remove the ashtray by opening the lid and pulling the glass tray upwards. Install the tray by placing it into position and push down.



ASTON MARTIN

Electric Windows

⚠ Warning ⚠
Misuse of the window switches, especially by children, can result in injury due to entrapment in the window closure. Drivers must advise all occupants of the possible danger and ensure that all obstructions are clear before raising the window.

Volante Only
Due to wind pressure when travelling at very high speeds the door windows may not close correctly.

To raise and lower the windows the ignition must be at position 'II'.



Lower - Lightly press and release the window switch (A) to lower the window in stages. Press firmly and release to lower the window with one touch.

Raise - Lightly pull back and release the window switch (A) to raise the window in stages.

If power to the electric windows has been interrupted for any reason, they will fail to operate correctly until reset (Refer to 'Door Window Reset', page 12.40).

Door Sealing

⚠ Warning ⚠
Ensure that all occupants are clear when the window mechanism is operating.

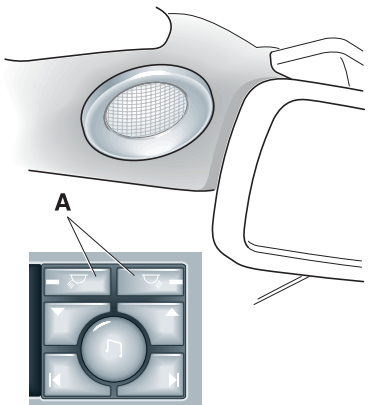
To minimise wind noise and ensure a watertight window seal a door sealing system is used to ensure a tight fit of the door glass to the seals around the top of the door opening.

When a door is opened, the window glass automatically lowers a few millimetres to clear the door seal. As the door is closed, the window glass automatically, after a pause, raises against the body frame rubber seals.

Reading Lamps

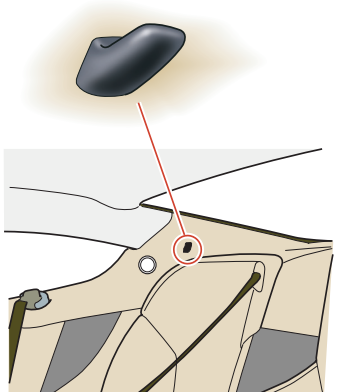
Both reading lamps are controlled by the individual switches mounted on the infotainment centre (A).

Unless switched off / on at (A) they will continue to operate up to four minutes after the ignition is switched off.



Coat Hook

A coat hook is provided behind the drivers seat.



Umbrella

An umbrella, complete with holder, is provided in the rear of the boot.

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

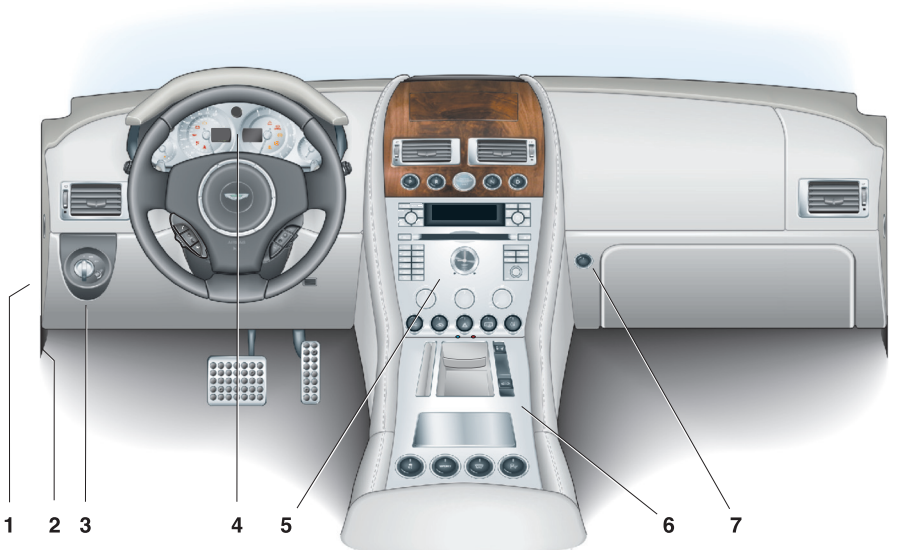
ASTON MARTIN

Controls

Contents

Left Hand Drive Overview 4.2
Right Hand Drive Overview 4.3
Instrument Cluster 4.4
Information / Warning Lamps 4.6
Stalk Controls 4.10
Centre Stack 4.12
Centre Console 4.14
Fuel Flap Switch 4.15
Reduced Guard Switch 4.16
Master Lamp Switch 4.16
Vehicle Horn 4.17
Ignition Lock 4.18
Trip Computer 4.18
Cruise Control 4.20
Ambient Temperature 4.22
Tyre Pressure Sensing 4.22

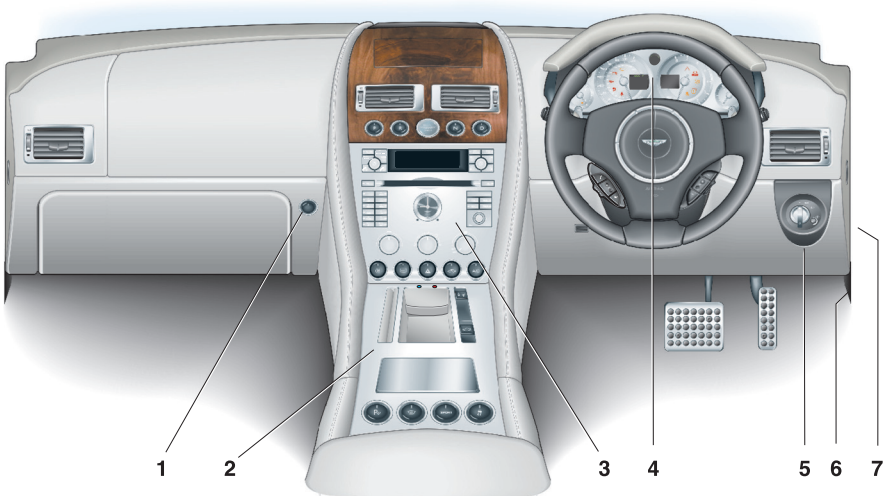
Left Hand Drive Overview



1. Reduced guard Switch (Refer to page 4-16).
2. Fuel flap release (Refer to page 4-15)
3. Master light Switch (Refer to page 4-16).
4. Instrument Cluster (Refer to page 4-4).
5. Centre Stack (Refer to page 4-13).
6. Centre Console (Refer to page 4-14).
7. Glovebox switch (Refer to page 4-13).

(Automatic Transmission shown)

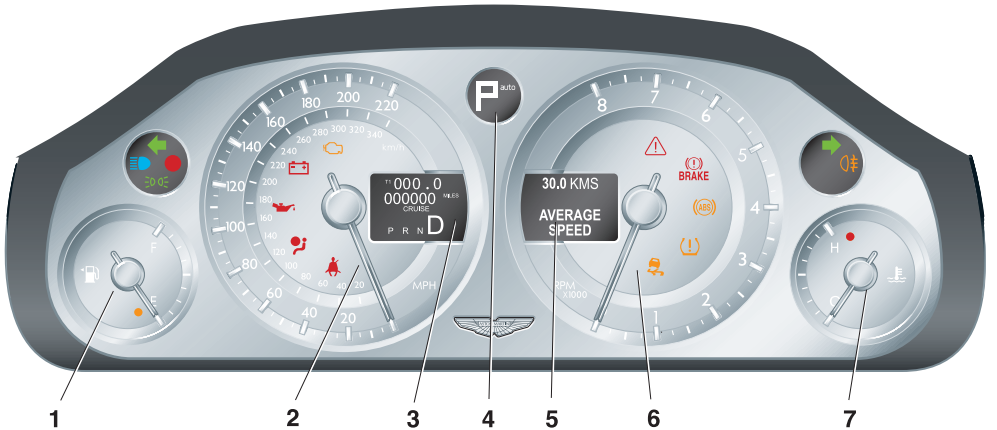
Right Hand Drive Overview



1. Glovebox switch (Refer to page 4-13).
2. Centre Console (Refer to page 4-14).
3. Centre Stack (Refer to page 4-13).
4. Instrument Cluster (Refer to page 4-4).
5. Master lamp Switch (Refer to page 4-16).
6. Fuel flap release (Refer to page 4-15).
7. Reduced guard Switch (Refer to page 4-16).

(Automatic Transmission shown)

Instrument Cluster



(1) Fuel Gauge - Indicates how much fuel is in the fuel tank. Refuel as soon as possible when the low fuel lamp illuminates.

(2) Speedometer - Indicates vehicle road speed.

(3) Message Display (Left) - Displays the following: -

(A) Trip Meter - Shows distances travelled since last reset of trip counters T1 and T2 (Refer to 'Trip Meter', page 4.19).

(B) Sport Mode Status (Auto Only) - Shows 'Sport' when sport mode is activated.

(C) Gear Range (Auto Only) - Indicates transmission position and current gear selection. Possible transmission positions and gear selection are in bold. Items not in bold are not selectable.



(D) Cruise Status - Shows 'Cruise' when cruise control is activated (Refer to 'Cruise Control', page 4.20).

(E) Odometer - Shows the total distance covered by the vehicle.

(4) Gear Position Indicator Display (GPID) -

In **Drive Auto** mode indicates the current transmission position. In '**Touchtronic'** mode indicates the current gear selection.



The current transmission mode is also shown ('**Auto**' / '**Touch**') (Refer to 'Automatic Transmission', page 5.3).

Manual Transmission – Indicates the optimum time to shift gear. A red 'R' will show when the transmission is in reverse (Refer to 'Driving (Manual Transmission)', page 5.10).

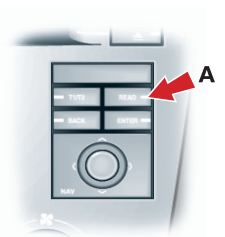


(5) Message Display (Right) - Displays the following:

Driver Information / **Warnings** Messages appear if an unsatisfactory condition is detected. Message priority is indicated by a red / amber triangle above the message display.

- **Red** Potential personal danger or danger of damage to the vehicle
- **Amber** Advisory, indicate possible degraded vehicle performance

Warning messages will be displayed when the ignition is on and will cycle automatically. View / acknowledge messages at any time by pressing the **Read** button (A).



Trip Computer The message display defaults to the trip computer when there are no messages to show (Refer to 'Trip Computer', page 4.18).

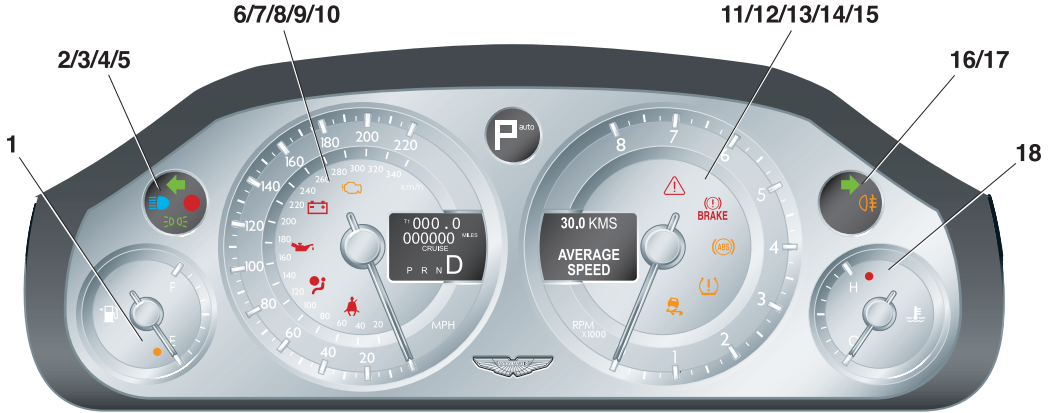
Service Intervals

'Time for Regular Service' will be displayed when a regular vehicle service is due. This message will show at ignition on for 120 seconds. It will continue display at ignition on until the regular service has taken place.

(6) Tachometer - Indicates engine speed in revolutions per minute x 1000.

(7) Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge - Shows the temperature of the engine coolant.

Information / Warning Lamps



(1) Low Fuel Warning Lamp (Amber) - Illuminates when approximately 9 ltr (2 Galls) remain.

At 9 ltr (2 Galls) and 5 ltr (1 Galls) an audible 'beep' will sound and the 'estimated distance' message will show (for 20 seconds) in the message centre right.

(2) Left Turn Direction Indicators (Green) - Flashes with the indicator lamps or hazard warning lamps (Ignition at position 'II').

(3) Headlamps (Blue) - Indicates the main beam of the headlamps is in use.

(4) Side Lamps (Green) - Indicates the side lamps / dip or main beams are illuminated.

(5) PATS Lamp - If the lamp flashes continuously at ignition position 'II' the vehicle will remain immobilised. If the lamp is on continuously at ignition position 'II' the vehicle will start but PATS has gone into 'Fail Safe' mode (Refer to 'Passive Anti-Theft System (PATS)', page 2.16).

Vehicles with Aston Martin Tracking Installed

If the PATS light continues to illuminate after the vehicle has started the driver recognition tag may not be in range of the tracking system (Refer to 'Aston Martin Tracking', page 2.2).

⚠ Warning ⚠
Stop immediately if the Check Engine lamp flashes, do not drive the vehicle. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

(6) Check Engine (Amber) - Steady amber indicates a fault in the engine management system. Consult your Aston Martin Dealer immediately. Flashing amber indicates a major fault in the engine management system.

(7) Ignition Warning Lamp (Red) - Illuminates when the ignition is on. Extinguishes when the engine is started and battery charging commences. Illuminates if battery charging fails whilst driving.

(8) Oil Pressure Warning Lamp (Red) - Illuminates when the engine oil pressure falls below minimum. Do not continue driving if this lamp remains illuminated. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer immediately.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not drive the vehicle if the SRS warning lamp remains on. Have the system checked by an Aston Martin Dealer.

(9) SRS (Supplementary Restraint System) (Red) - At ignition positions 'I' and 'II' or on vehicle start up, this lamp illuminates for a few seconds as a readiness indicator. If it does not illuminate, or if it does not go off after a few seconds, or if it comes on whilst driving, the airbag self-diagnostic system has detected a fault.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not drive the vehicle if the seat belt warning lamp remains on. Have the system checked by an Aston Martin Dealer.

(10) Seat Belt Warning (Red) - This warning lamp will illuminate and a chime will sound for six seconds if the driver's seat belt is not fastened when the ignition is switched on. The chime will continue to activate at different vehicle speeds until the seat belt is fastened.

Market dependant

(11) Warning Triangle - Indicates Red or Amber depending on warning / information message priority.

⚠ Warning ⚠
If the Brake Warning lamp remains illuminated, after fully releasing the handbrake do not drive the vehicle. Have the system checked by an Aston Martin Dealer.

(12) Brake Warning (Red) - At ignition position 'II' this lamp will illuminate when the handbrake is applied. It will go out when the handbrake is fully released. If the lamp remains on, after fully releasing the handbrake, it indicates that either the brake fluid level is low and / or that the brake pads require regular maintenance (Refer to 'Footbrake', page 5.11).

⚠ Warning ⚠
If the ABS Warning lamp remains illuminated, do not drive the vehicle. Have the system checked by an Aston Martin Dealer.

(13) ABS Warning Lamp (Amber) - Indicates a concern in the ABS control circuits. Consult your Aston Martin Dealer immediately if this lamp remains illuminated.

(14) Tyre Pressure (Amber) (Not Japanese Market) - During vehicle start up, this lamp will illuminate, briefly, as a readiness indicator. It will illuminate again if tyre pressure falls below specification (Refer to 'Tyre Pressure Sensing', page 4.22).

(15) Dynamic Stability Control - At ignition position 'II' or on vehicle start up, this lamp will illuminate, as a readiness indicator. If, while DSC is active, the DSC symbol stays illuminated or it illuminates whilst driving, the DSC system has detected a fault. A DSC fault message will be displayed in the message centre (right). Consult your Aston Martin Dealer as soon as possible. (Refer to 'Dynamic Stability Control (DSC)', page 5.14).

(16) Right Turn Direction Indicators (Green) - Flashes with the indicator lamps or hazard warning lamps (Ignition at position 'II').

(17) Rear Fog - Indicates if the rear fog lamps are on.

(18) High Coolant Temp (Red) - Indicates when engine coolant temperature exceeds 120°C (248°F).

Low Outside Temperature

At temperatures below 4°C (39°F) the message 'Ice Warning' is displayed in the message centre right, this indicates to the driver that frost or ice is likely to form on road surfaces.

The amber warning triangle will also illuminate.

The the message and warning triangle will continue to show until the outside temperature rises to a safer level.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Even if the 'Ice Warning' message does not show, there is no guarantee that at low temperatures the road is free from ice.

ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN

Warning Lamp Indications

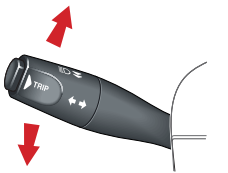
As the ignition is switched on, the electronic control units complete a self check to ensure correct operation. During these checks the following information and warning lamps will illuminate for 5 seconds and 'System Check' will appear on the message display (right).

Under normal circumstances most warning lamps will extinguish at the end of the individual system check if system checks are satisfactory.

	Anti-Skid		Oil Pressure
ABS	ABS		Fog light (rear)
	Battery charging		Seat Belt
BRAKE	Brake		SRS
	Check engine		Tyre Pressure
	Fuel		

Stalk Controls

Left Hand Stalk



Turn Signals - Up indicates a right turn. Down indicates a left turn. Hold against spring pressure to indicate a lane change. Returns to the centre position on completion of a manoeuvre.



Main and Dipped Beam Switching - Pull forwards and latch for main beam. Pull forwards again and latch to return to dipped beam. Pull forwards and release without latching, at any time while the ignition key is inserted, to flash main beam on and off.

Pull forwards and release without latching, when the ignition key is removed, to activate Homesafe (Refer to 'Homesafe', page 2.13).

Trip Computer - Repeated pressing of the trip function button cycles through the trip computer displays. (Refer to 'Trip Computer', page 4.18).



Right Hand Stalk

Windscreen Wiper Control -
(1) Off.
(2) Intermittent Wipe.
(3) Normal Speed Wipe.
(4) Fast Wipe.

Demand Wipe - Pull the stalk forwards.



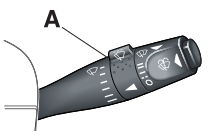
The windscreen wipers will return to their park position if the ignition is switched off or the bonnet is unlatched, regardless of the RH stalk position.

Speed Sensitive Wipe - If the wipers are at fast wipe, when the vehicle slows down (below 11 km/h (7 m.p.h.)) the wipers will go to normal wipe speed.

If the wipers are at normal speed when the vehicle slows down (below 11 km/h (7 m.p.h.)) the wipers will go to intermittent wipe (position 2).

As soon as the vehicle speeds up (above 15 km/h (9.5 m.p.h.) the wipers will return to their original setting.

Windscreen Wiper Delay Control - Intermittent wipe time delay increases / decreases in six steps (A). Sixth position gives the shortest delay between wipes.



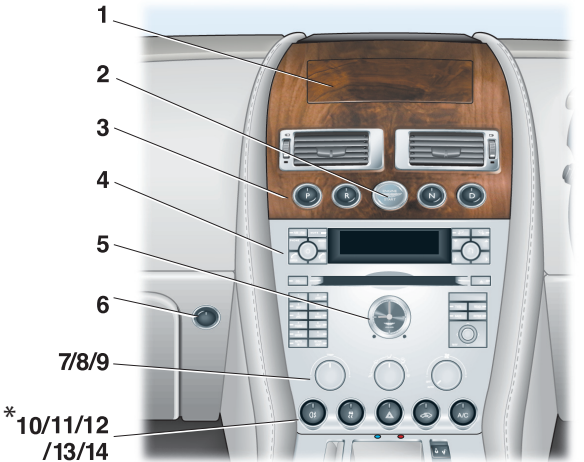
Windscreen Washer Control -
Press for more than one second to activate the windscreen washers. Operation continues until the button is released. When released the washers stop immediately but the wipers continue for a few strokes, ending with a pause and then a final wipe.



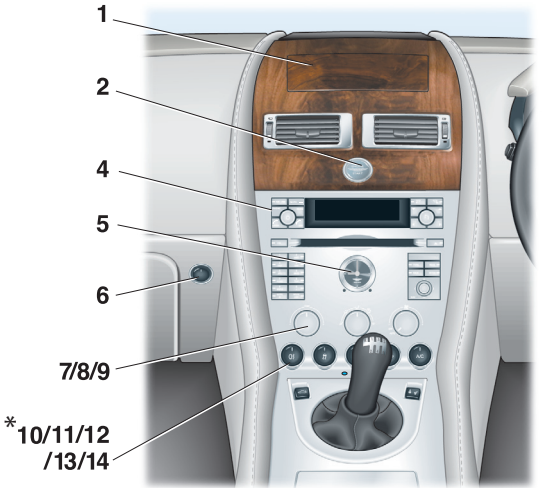
If used during normal wiper operation, the wipers operate continually irrespective of the washer operation.

Headlamp Washers - Headlamp washers will operate automatically, once per journey (each ignition cycle), if the windscreen washers are operated and the headlamps are on.

Centre Stack (Automatic Transmission)



Centre Stack (Manual Transmission)



(1) Satellite Navigation Screen (Not available in all markets) - Opens when Satellite Navigation system is active (Refer to 'Satellite Navigation', page 11.1).



(2) Engine Start - When illuminated Red, press to start the engine (Refer to 'Starting the Engine', page 5.2).

(3) Transmission Control Switches - Automatic vehicles only. (Refer to 'Automatic Transmission', page 5.3).

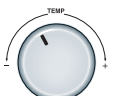
(4) Infotainment Centre - Contains the controls and switches for Audio (Refer to 'Audio', page 8.1), the 'in-car' telephone (Refer to 'Car Phone (Option)', page 9.1) and Satellite Navigation (Refer to 'Satellite Navigation', page 11.1). The two top RH switches control the two reading lamps (Refer to 'Reading Lamps', page 3.27).



(5) Clock - The left button will retard time and the right button will advance time. Use an object with a point, e.g. a ballpoint pen, to set the time.



(6) Glovebox - Press to open the glovebox. Push up and latch to close



(7) Temperature Dial - Turn clockwise to increase or anticlockwise to decrease the cabin temperature (Refer to 'Climate Control', page 7.1).



(8) Air Flow Dial - Turn to select the Air flow mode (Refer to 'Climate Control', page 7.1).



(9) Fan Speed Dial - Turn clockwise to increase or anticlockwise to decrease the fan speed (Refer to 'Climate Control', page 7.1).



(10) Rear Fog Lamps - Used in conjunction with the dipped beam when fog is causing restricted visibility. They **must** be switched off when visibility clears to reduce glare to the drivers of following vehicles.

* On LHD vehicles these switches are reversed.

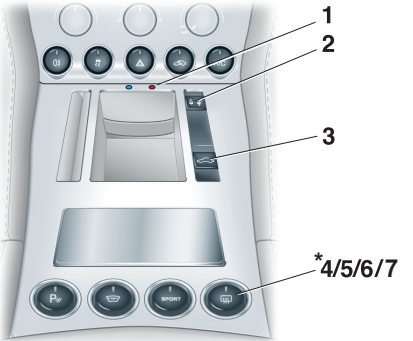
(11) Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) - The DSC system is always on when the ignition is switched on. Press and hold for approx. 4 seconds to switch Off. Press and release to switch On. (Refer to 'Dynamic Stability Control (DSC)', page 5.14).

(12) Hazard Warning Lamps - Press to activate the hazard warning lamps. Press again to de-activate.

(13) Air Recirculation Switch - Press to select outside or recirculated air as the source of air entering the vehicle (Refer to 'Climate Control', page 7.1).

(14) Air Conditioning Switch - Press to switch Air Conditioning On or Off (Refer to 'Climate Control', page 7.1).

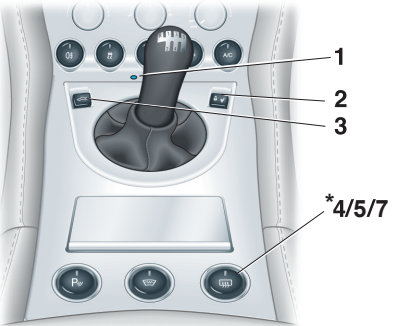
Centre Console (Automatic Transmission)



(1) Bluetooth LEDs (Not available in all markets) - Blue and amber LEDs to indicate Bluetooth status (Refer to 'Bluetooth (Option)', page 10.1).

* On LHD vehicles these switches are reversed.

Centre Console (Manual Transmission)



(2) Master Vehicle Lock - Press to lock both doors and disable the boot lock and the boot open switch. Pull up to unlock. (Refer to 'Master Lock Switch', page 2.9).



(3) Boot Open - Pull up to open the boot. On Volante models this switch becomes the roof open and close switch (Refer to 'Convertible Roof (Volante)', page 6.1).



(4) Rear Parking Assist - Switch parking assist On / Off. Illuminates when parking assist is Off (Refer to 'Rear Parking Assist', page 5.18).

Front and Rear Parking Assist (Option) - Press and release to activate front parking assist at speeds below 15 km/h (9 m.p.h.), press and release again to deactivate. Illuminates when parking assist is On (Refer to 'Front and Rear Parking Assist (Option)', page 5.19).



(5) Heated Front Windscreen (Option) - Switches off after 6.5 minutes if not manually switched off. Will operate automatically when auto defrost and defrost are used (Refer to 'Climate Control', page 7.1).



(6) Sport Mode Switch (Automatic transmission only) - (Refer to 'Automatic Transmission', page 5.3).

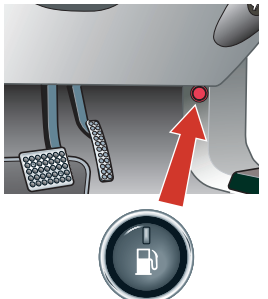


(7) Heated Rear Windscreen - Press to activate the rear windscreen heater. Switches off after 21 minutes if not manually switched off. When the heated rear windscreen is activated the door mirror heaters will work for 12 minutes, then switch off.

Fuel Flap Switch

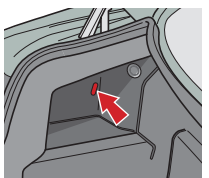
Press to open the fuel flap.

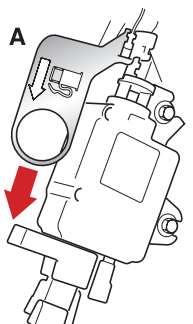
Close the fuel flap by pressing down on the flap until the lock engages.



Filler Flap Emergency Release

If the filler flap will not open when the release switch is pressed, open the filler flap manually. Reach through the LH boot trim to access the manual fuel filler flap release. Pull the lever (A) to open the filler flap.

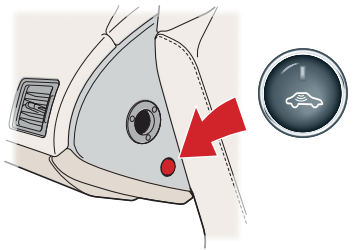




Reduced Guard Switch

The reduced guard switch disables the deadlock system and allows for passengers or animals to be left in the vehicle without activating the security system.

With the ignition key in the '0' or 'I' position or within 60 seconds of removing the ignition key the reduced guard switch can be activated. The switch lamp will show red when reduced guard is active.



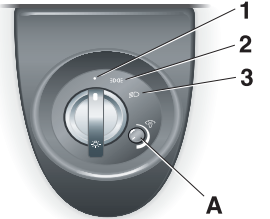
(Refer to 'Reduced Guard', page 2.14).

Master Lamp Switch

(1) **-** All external lamps off.

(2) **-** Side lamps, rear lamps and registration plate lamps on.

(3) **-** Headlamps on, in addition to the side, rear and registration plate lamps.



If Homesafe (Refer to 'Homesafe', page 2.13) has been activated with the master lamp switch at position 3 (headlamps on), the main beam will remain on. Ensure the master lamp switch is at position 1 before exiting.

Lights On Warning

If the vehicle side lights or headlights are on and the drivers door is opened a warning buzzer will sound. The buzzer will sound for a period of 5 minutes.

To stop the buzzer switch the lights off.

The buzzer will also stop when the driver's door is shut -the lights will still be on.

Day Time Running Lamps

(Denmark and Norway only)

The dipped beams and side lights are permanently on.

Headlamp Levelling

The weight of items placed in the boot and passengers may change the beam angle of the headlamps. The headlamps are continuously monitored and automatically adjusted to compensate.

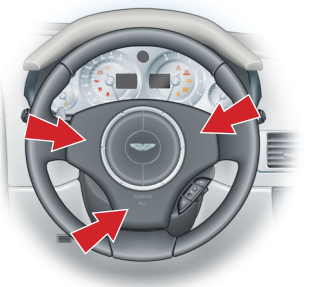
Instrument Cluster Illumination

The level of instrument illumination can be adjusted using the rotary control (A). Clockwise rotation increases the brightness of the illumination.

Push the rotary control in and release to enable the control. Push in and release to lock the control.

Vehicle Horn

To sound the horn press the centre pad of the steering wheel.

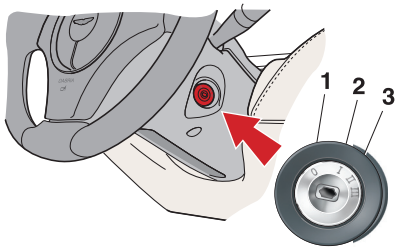


Ignition Lock

(1) '0' - All systems off, steering lock engaged.

(2) 'I' - Steering lock released. Auxiliaries on (e.g. Audio).

(3) 'II' - Ignition and all other electrical systems on.

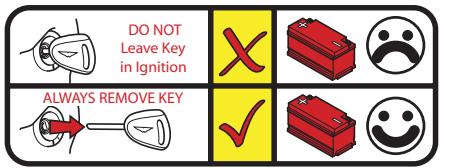


Vehicles with automatic transmission must show 'P' (Park) in the message display (left) to remove the ignition key.

Preventing Unnecessary Battery Drain

Some circuits remain active when the ignition is switched off and the ignition key remains in the ignition lock. If the key is left in the ignition lock, unnecessary current will be drawn from the battery.

A temporary label is installed on all new vehicles to remind drivers to remove the ignition key whenever the ignition is switched off.



(Refer to 'Battery Charge', page 12.24).

Trip Computer

Pressing (A) for less than 3 seconds cycles through the trip computer functions one at a time. Trip computer information is viewed in the message centre right.



*If an information message displays, after reading and acting on the information provided press the '**Read**' button to return to the trip display.*

Range - Estimated range on remaining fuel (no reset). The minimum distance displayed will read 20 km (15 mile). Below this distance will show '---'.



Average Fuel - Average fuel consumption since last reset. Press (A) for more than 3 seconds but less than 5 seconds to reset. Press (A) for 5 seconds or more will reset both the average fuel consumption and average speed. 'Infocenter is Reset' will be displayed in the message centre right.



Instantaneous Fuel - Indicates the fuel consumption over the last 3 seconds of travel (no reset).



Average Speed - Shows the average speed since last reset. Press (A) for more than 3 seconds but less than 5 seconds to reset. Press (A) for 5 seconds or more will reset both the average speed and average fuel consumption. 'Infocenter is Reset' will be displayed in the message centre right.



Present Speed - Indicates the present vehicle speed.

Driver aid only.

Trip computer default screen.



Blank Screen - Blank screen will show.

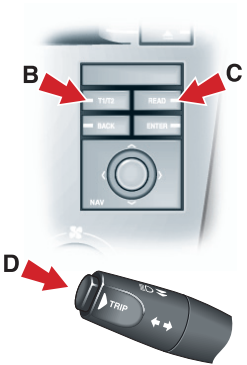
Trip Meter

Shows distances travelled since last reset of trip meters T1 and T2. Toggle between T1 and T2 by pressing (B) for less than 3 seconds.

Press (B) for more than 3 seconds to reset the trip meter on display.

Display Units

With the ignition at position 'II' press (C) and (D) together for 3 seconds to change the trip computer display units.



Cruise Control

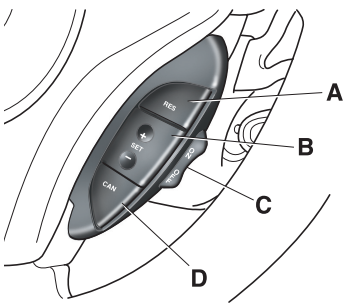
Cruise control can be used to maintain a selected vehicle speed, above 35 km/h (22 m.p.h.), without having to use the accelerator.

(A) RES - Resume the set speed retained in memory.

(B) SET '+' / '–' - Set the speed or accelerate / decelerate.

(C) On / Off - Switches cruise control On / Off.

(D) CAN - Cancels cruise control but retains the set speed in memory.



Cruise Control On /Off

Use the 'On / Off' switch (C) to activate / deactivate cruise control. Under certain conditions cruise control will automatically switch off (Refer to 'Cruise Control Automatic Switch Off', page 4.21). When cruise control is active 'Cruise' will show in the message display (left) (Refer to 'Instrument Cluster', page 4.4).

Setting Vehicle Speed

⚠ Warning ⚠
Only use cruise control when conditions are favourable, for example, straight, dry, open roads with light traffic.

When travelling at the desired speed, which must be above 35 km/h (22 m.p.h.), press the **'SET' (+ or –)** button (B). Cruise control will engage and maintain that speed without the need to use the accelerator pedal.

Cruise control will automatically disengage when the brake pedal is pressed or when the vehicle speed falls below 35 km/h (22 m.p.h.).

Changing the Set Speed

There are three ways to change the set speed:

1. Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed then press **'SET' (+ or –)**.
2. Increase or decrease the speed by pressing and holding either **SET '+'** or **'–'** until the desired speed is obtained, then release the switch.
3. Increase or decrease the speed in steps of 2 km/h (1 m.p.h.) by briefly pressing either **SET '+'** or **'–'** until the desired speed is obtained.

Resuming the Set Speed

If the vehicle is accelerated above the set speed, then the set speed will be resumed when the accelerator pedal is released.

If **'CAN'** (D) is pressed, or the brake or clutch pedal is pressed, the cruise control will disengage but the set speed memory will be retained. Press **'RES'** (A) and the vehicle will return to the set speed.

*Cruise control will not resume at speeds below 35 km/h (22 m.p.h.) **'RES'** will not operate if the ignition has been turned off.*

'RES' should only be used if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it.

It is not recommended to resume set speed when a low gear is selected as excessive engine speeds will occur.

Cruise Control Automatic Switch Off

Cruise control will automatically switch off and clear the memory when:

- The ignition is switched to position '0'
- A fault occurs. The cruise control system will switch off and cannot be used until the fault is cleared
- The handbrake is applied
- Maximum vehicle speed is reached

Cruise control will automatically switch off but the set speed will remain in the memory when:

- The **'CAN'** button is pressed
- The brake pedal is pressed
- Vehicle speed falls below 35 km/h (22 m.p.h.)

- Neutral, Park or Reverse gear positions are selected
- The difference between the actual and set speed is too great
- When the set speed is above 144 km/h (90 m.p.h.); cruise control will disengage automatically after approximately 20 minutes
- The accelerator pedal is used to accelerate beyond the set speed for too long a period

Ambient Temperature

The ambient temperature (outside temperature) is displayed in the top RH corner of the Infotainment centre display.

If the vehicle has been travelling a while and then is stopped in a shaded / enclosed area the ambient temperature may rise, this is due to the heat from the engine bay. The ambient temperature display will reflect the true ambient temperature once the vehicle is moving again or the engine bay cools down.

If required the display units can be changed from °C to °F or °F to °C (Refer to 'Display Units', page 7.10).

Tyre Pressure Sensing

Japanese Market

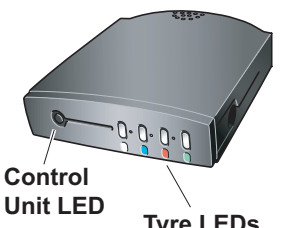
Tyre pressure sensing is not available.

⚠ Warning ⚠

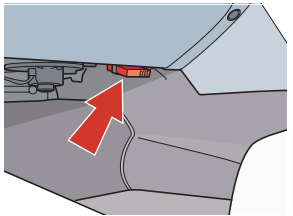
Tyre pressure sensing is not intended to replace driver awareness of tyre performance or the need for recommended weekly checks on tyre condition and pressure.

Tyre pressure sensing monitors the vehicle tyre pressures and feeds-back this information to the driver.

Each road wheel is installed with a tyre pressure sensing device which sends tyre pressure information to a control unit.



The control unit is mounted in the front passenger footwell, near the transmission tunnel, underneath the front facia.



Each pressure sensing device has a colour coded collar. Ensure the coloured collars are installed correctly, i.e. after new tyres are installed.

Roadwheel	Colour
Front Right	Green
Front Left	Red
Rear Right	Blue
Rear Left	Yellow

Tyre pressure sensing is also available on winter wheels and tyres.
Refer to your Aston Martin Dealer.

LED Status

At the start of each journey the control unit LEDs will flash continuously until a speed of 16 km/h (10 m.p.h.) has been reached. At this speed the LEDs start to receive signals from the pressure sensing devices in the roadwheels and the tyre LEDs will extinguish one by one.

The control unit will remain active until the vehicle has come to a halt and the ignition turned to position 'I'.

At the end of each journey, while the engine is still running, check the status of the control unit.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Ensure that 'P' or 'N' (automatic) or neutral (manual) has been selected and that the handbrake is applied.

Look at the control unit - if the control unit LED shows constant green and no tyre LEDs are illuminated - the system is working correctly.

If the LEDs show any LEDs other than detailed above then refer to the tables below.

The control unit provides a visual warning by illuminating the tyre pressure warning lamp (A) on the instrument panel if any tyre pressure falls below specification.



Warnings

Instrument Cluster	Lamp constant
Control module	Tyre LED constant **red**.
Fault	Tyre pressure below specification.

Action

Reduce speed to 48 km/h (30 m.p.h.). Stop in safe place as soon as possible.

One of the coloured LEDs on the control module will illuminate to indicate which tyre requires inflating. The LED colour corresponds to the colour of the band below each tyre valve cap. Inspect affected tyre. Re-inflate if necessary. If on inspection the tyre is found to be OK, continue at 48 km/h (30 m.p.h.) maximum. Have the control unit checked at the earliest opportunity. Consult your Aston Martin Dealer.

Take care to replace caps on the correct road wheel after re-inflating the tyre.

Instrument Cluster	N/A
Control module	Control unit LED constant **green.** Tyre LED constant **amber**.
Fault	Tyre transmitter fault.

Action

Reduce speed to 48 km/h (30 m.p.h.). Stop in safe place as soon as possible.

Inspect affected tyre. Re-inflate if necessary.

If on inspection the tyre is found to be OK, continue at 48 km/h (30 m.p.h.) maximum. Have the control unit checked at the earliest opportunity.

Consult your Aston Martin Dealer.

Instrument Cluster	N/A
Control module	Control unit LED flashing **amber.** Tyre LED flashing **amber**.
Fault	Tyre transmitter fault.

Action

Stop in safe place as soon as possible.

Check all tyres for flats. If OK, continue at 48 km/h (30 m.p.h.) maximum.

Have the control unit and the tyre transmitters checked at the earliest opportunity. Consult your Aston Martin Dealer.

Instrument Cluster	N/A
Control module	Control unit LED constant **red.**
Fault	System failure.

Action

Stop in safe place as soon as possible.

Check all tyres for flats. If OK, continue at 48 km/h (30 m.p.h.) maximum.

Have the control unit and the tyre transmitters checked at the earliest opportunity. Consult your Aston Martin Dealer.

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

Driving

Contents

Driving Safety 5.2
Starting the Engine 5.2
Automatic Transmission 5.3
Driving (Automatic Transmission) 5.8
Driving (Manual Transmission) 5.10
Footbrake 5.11
Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS) 5.12
Handbrake 5.13
Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) 5.14
Fuel Filling 5.16
Catalytic Converters 5.17
Rear Parking Assist 5.18
Front and Rear Parking Assist (Option) 5.19
Driving Techniques 5.21

Driving Safety

Always wear your seat belt

- Never drive under the influence of alcohol or drugs
- Always obey all speed and traffic laws and regulations. Never drive faster than the posted speed limit or than conditions allow
- Be particularly careful driving on slippery or wet surfaces
- This vehicle is a high performance vehicle and has handling characteristics you may not be accustomed to. Familiarise yourself with the vehicle and always drive prudently, being aware of your own limitations and the limitations of the vehicle. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate the vehicle properly can result in accident and injury
- Follow the maintenance schedule prescribed in this guide
- Never allow the vehicle to be driven by inexperienced drivers

Starting the Engine

Ensure you are wearing appropriate footwear to efficiently operate the control pedals. Ensure pedal movement is not restricted by floor mats or other objects trapped beneath pedals.

1. Check that the handbrake is applied and insert the ignition key. Rotate to position 'II'.

   Automatic Transmission: '**P**' will show on the GPID and in the message display left. The engine start button will illuminate red.

*Under certain conditions '**N**' may be displayed. This may indicate a transmission fault. Consult your Aston Martin Dealer.*

   Manual transmission: The start button will not illuminate red until the clutch pedal is pressed down.

2. Press the illuminated (red) 'Engine Start' button, wait until the engine fires, then release the button.

   The engine start button will show a white light when the engine is running, and then fade out.

Starting From Cold

The engine management system automatically compensates for cold or warm start conditions and makes appropriate adjustments to the fuel / air mixture and ignition timing.

Automatic Transmission

Innovative 'Shift by Wire' technology has allowed Aston Martin to replace the conventional PRND shift lever with a series of PRND selection buttons and gearshift paddles (Touchtronic control).

PRND Buttons

P (Park)



'**P**' can be selected from any gear position once the vehicle is stationary. The transmission will mechanically lock.

If the ignition is turned to position '0' while the vehicle is at a standstill, the transmission will automatically select '**P**' (Auto park).



Always ensure that the handbrake is applied.

The message centre left displays the current position and the GPID displays '**P**'.

It is not possible to select 'P' above approx. 2 km/h (1 m.p.h.).

R (Reverse)

The engine cannot be started in this position.



Reverse can only be selected by pressing the '**R**' button, while in '**P**' or '**N**', with the brake pedal pressed.

*If the vehicle speed is less than approx. 5 km/h (3 m.p.h.), '**R**' may be selected from '**D**', without pressing the brake pedal, to enable a vehicle 'rocking' i.e. to enable vehicle movement out of mud, snow, etc. If 5 km/h (3 m.p.h.) is exceeded then the transmission will automatically select '**N**'.*

*If the brake pedal is not pressed the message display will read '**Press Brake Pedal**'.*

The message centre left displays the current position, the GPID displays '**R**' coloured red, an audible warning will sound and the reverse button 'telltale' lamp will illuminate.



N (Neutral)



Select neutral by pressing the '**N**' button or by pulling back on both gearshift paddles simultaneously.

When selecting '**N**' from '**P**' the brake pedal must be depressed.

*If the brake pedal is not pressed the message display will read '**Press Brake Pedal**'.*



The message centre left displays the current position and the GPID displays '**N**'.

D (Drive)

The engine cannot be started in this position.



At standstill drive is selected by pressing the '**D**' button with the brake pedal depressed.

*If the vehicle speed is less than approx. 5 km/h (3 m.p.h.), '**D**' may be selected from '**R**', without pressing the brake pedal. This enables a vehicle 'rocking' motion, i.e. to enable vehicle movement out of mud, snow, etc.*

*If the brake pedal is not pressed the message display will read '**Press Brake Pedal**'.*

The message centre (left) will display the current position, the GPID displays '**D**' and '**Auto**' and the drive button 'telltale' lamp will illuminate.



From '**D**' enter '**Touchtronic**' mode (Refer to 'Touchtronic Mode', page 5.5) by pulling back on either the '**+**' or '**–**' gearshift paddles. The message centre left will still display the current position but the GPID will now display the current gear, i.e. '**2**' and '**Touch**' and the drive button 'telltale' lamp will go out.

*If selecting drive from '**N**', '**D**' or '**Touchtronic**' mode can be selected.*

***'D' –** press the '**D**' button.*

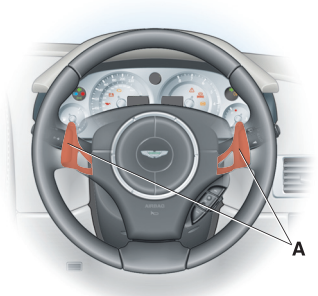
***'Touchtronic'** – Pull back the either the '**+**' or '**–**' gearshift paddles.*

Gearshift Paddles

Two gearshift paddles (A) are mounted behind the steering wheel. In touchtronic mode use the paddles to change gear.

RH paddle (+) - Controls upshifts

LH paddle (–) - Controls downshifts.



Touchtronic Mode

Gearshifts up and down are controlled by the driver, using the shift paddles mounted on the steering column.

While in '**D**' select '**Touchtronic'** mode by pulling back on either the '**+**' or '**–**' gearshift paddles. As a paddle is pulled back a gearshift will occur, this will be an upshift or downshift according to which shift paddle is pulled.

*To select '**Touchtronic'** mode directly from '**N**', pull back either the '**+**' or '**–**' gearshift paddles.*

If no driver input is detected the transmission will automatically upshift and downshift to remain within operating limits of the engine and transmission (except when in Sport mode (Refer to 'Sport Mode', page 5.5)).

When shifting gear the GPID displays the target gear and '**Touch**', while the message centre left will display the actual gear when the transmission has shifted.



Sport Mode



Sport mode can be selected while in '**D**' or '**Touchtronic'** modes. Press the '**Sport**' button once to enter sport mode and press again to exit sport mode.

The Sport mode button lamp will illuminate and '**Sport**' will display in the message centre (left) when sport mode is engaged.

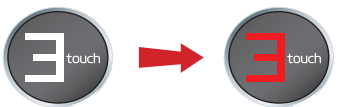
*If selecting 'Sport' mode while in '**D**' – top gear (6th) a downshift to 5th gear will occur.*

This will not happen if cruise control is active.

Upshifts and downshifts will occur at higher engine speeds in **'D' Sport** than in **'D' Auto** mode to provide a sportier drive.

When Sport mode is engaged while in '**Touchtronic**' mode, automatic upshifts are inhibited.

To inform the driver that the current gear has reached it's upper rev. limit the GPID gear indication will change from green to flashing red.



Maximum Engine Speed

The maximum safe engine speed is 7,200 rpm. If this speed is exceeded, fuel supply to the engine is reduced. As the engine speed reduces back to a safe level, fuel supply is progressively restored.

Park (P) Override

If the vehicle fails to start or has broken down the automatic transmission will go into '**P**' (park) mode. To tow or move the vehicle a 'park override' lever is provided to manually disengage the automatic transmission park lock.

Apply the handbrake before operating the park override. There is the danger that the vehicle will roll, depending on the incline of the road.

After stopping the vehicle apply the handbrake and push back the park override lever.

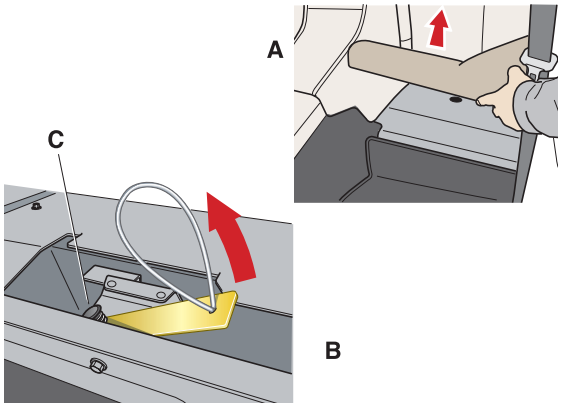
Operating the Park Override

Apply the handbrake. Remove the LH rear seat base (A) and unscew the two screws that secure the park override lever cover. Remove the cover.

Pull the manual park override lever (B) fully up on the ratchet, fully releasing the parking lock.

After towing or moving the vehicle apply the handbrake. Lift the manual park override lever slightly, press the ratchet release (C) and lower the manual park override lever back to the stop. The parking lock is now engaged. Install the cover and the rear seat base.

The message in the instrument pack must disappear and the position display must change from 'N' to 'P'. Otherwise there is the danger that the vehicle will roll away.



Limp-home Mode

If a fault is detected in the 'Shift by Wire' system the vehicle will go into 'Limp Home' mode. There are three types of 'Limp Home'.

Electrical - 'Gearbox Fault Reduced Function' will be displayed in the message centre right. Touchtronic and Sport modes will be disabled. Gearshifts will still be possible but shift quality will be degraded.

*In certain circumstances '**D**' will be restricted to 3rd gear. If travelling at speed 3rd gear will engage when an appropriate speed has been reached.*

Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

Reduced Engine Performance - 'Reduced Engine Perform' will display in the message centre right. Engine performance will be restricted. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

Mechanical - 'Limphome No Gear Change Possible' will display in the message centre right and an audible warning will sound. If travelling forwards in '**D**' or '**D Touch**' the vehicle will go into a locked gear (3rd or 5th depending on vehicle speed).

Do not attempt to change position while in mechanical limp home mode, i.e. pressing either P, R, N, D or pulling back on both gear shift paddles simultaneously. If this request is detected at a speed below approx. 20 km (12.5 m.p.h.) the engine will stop and the parking lock will engage.

At a speed above approx. 20 km (12.5 m.p.h.) the request and any other transmission request will be rejected and the vehicle will continue in 3rd or 5th.

If entering mechanical limp home mode in any position other than '**D**', '**D Touch**' (forward gears) the park lock will engage (Refer to 'Park (P) Override', page 5.6). Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

Driving (Automatic Transmission)

Automatic Mode

1. Start the engine.
2. Apply the footbrake and select a drive option. Check that the handbrake is released. Release the footbrake and gradually increase engine speed to move off.

   Gearshifts will occur automatically as speed increases.

When selecting a gear ensure that the correct position and gear has been selected by checking the message display left and the GPID.

*At any point while in '**D**' pull back on a gear shift paddle to enter '**Touchtronic**' mode ('**+**' – Upshift / '**–**' – Downshift).*

3. To bring the vehicle to a halt, press the brake pedal. The transmission will downshift automatically.

   The vehicle will remain ready to move off immediately when the accelerator is pressed.

When the vehicle is stationary the transmission will select 1st gear.

4. To stop the engine, press '**P**', apply the handbrake and turn the ignition key to position '**O**'.

If unable to engage 'P' a warning will appear in the message centre right and a audible warning will sound.

Touchtronic Mode

1. Start the engine.
2. Select Touchtronic mode.
   - From position '**P**'

     Apply the footbrake and push the '**D**' button, then pull back either the '**+**' or '**–**' gearshift paddles.
   - From position '**N**'

     Apply the footbrake and pull back either the '**+**' or '**–**' gearshift paddles.

When selecting a gear ensure that the correct position and gear has been selected by checking the message display left and the GPID.

3. Check that the handbrake is released. Gradually increase engine speed to move off.
4. Upshift by pulling and releasing the '**+**' paddle and downshift by pulling and releasing the '**–**' shift paddle.

Upshifts and downshifts will automatically occur if the engine speed rises or lowers to the Max. or Min. operating limits. Unless the transmission is in Sport mode (Refer to 'Sport Mode', page 5.5).

*At any point while in '**Touchtronic**' mode press the '**D**' button to enter Automatic mode.*

5. To bring the vehicle to a halt, press the brake pedal and downshift as required.

The transmission will automatically downshift if no driver input is detected.

When the vehicle is stationary the transmission will select 1st gear.

The vehicle will remain ready to move off immediately when the accelerator is pressed.

6. To stop the engine, press '**P**', apply the handbrake and turn the ignition key to position '**O**'.

If unable to engage 'P' a warning will appear in the message centre right and a audible warning will sound.

Selecting Reverse

Bring the vehicle to a halt, press the brake pedal and press the '**R**' button.

*If the brake pedal is not pressed the message display will read '**Press Brake Pedal**'.*

While the vehicle is stationary reverse can be selected from any gear position.

*If the vehicle speed is less than approx. 5 km/h (3 m.p.h.), '**R**' may be selected from '**D**', without pressing the brake pedal, to enable a vehicle 'rocking' motion i.e. to enable vehicle movement out of mud, snow, etc.*

Reverse can not be selected over approx. 5 km/h (3 m.p.h.).

The button lamp will illuminate red and '**R**' will be displayed, in red, in the GPID. Additionally, an audible warning will sound.

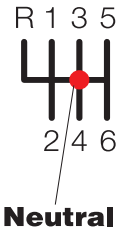
Release the brake pedal. Press the accelerator to move off in reverse.

Deselection of Reverse

Bring the vehicle to a halt. Either select a new gear position from the PRND buttons or pull back on both shift paddles to select 'N'.

The manual transmission features a six speed gearbox.





Gearshifts

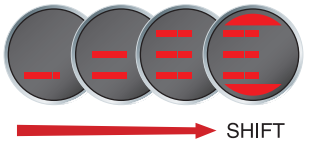
Press the clutch pedal, move the gear lever to the required gear position then slowly raise the clutch pedal.

Reverse gear is selected by overcoming spring resistance.

A red 'R' will show in the GPID when the transmission is in reverse.



To inform the driver that the current gear has reached it's upper rev. limit the GPID will indicate revs increasing.



For the first 2000 km (1243 mile) and when ever the engine temperature is below 40°C (104°F) the shift control will indicate early shift changes to protect the engine.

Maximum Engine Speed

The maximum safe engine speed is 7,200 rpm. If this speed is exceeded, fuel supply to the engine is reduced. As the engine speed reduces back to a safe level, fuel supply is progressively restored.

Footbrake

The footbrake operates through a vacuum boosted, dual (diagonal split) circuit, hydraulic system incorporating an Anti-lock Brake System (ABS).

Vacuum boost is only available while the engine is running.

If one circuit fails brake pressure will still be available to two road wheels. The footbrake will still operate but with greater pedal travel and longer stopping distances.

⚠ Warning ⚠

In the event of a brake failure bring the vehicle to a halt as soon as it is safe to do so. Do not continue to drive.

Brake Warnings

While driving, if the brake warning lamp (!) BRAKE illuminates, it indicates either that:

- The handbrake is not fully released
- The brake pads require regular maintenance
- The brake fluid level has fallen below an acceptable level

A warning message will show in the message centre right.

Stop, as soon as possible in a safe and convenient place. Apply the footbrake and ensure that the handbrake is fully released. If the handbrake is fully released and the lamp remains on, **do not drive** the vehicle. Contact the nearest Aston Martin Dealer. It is essential that the brake system is checked immediately, preferably by an Aston Martin Dealer.

⚠ Warning ⚠

If the brake warning lamp illuminates, you should immediately be prepared for possible increased stopping distances and possible partial failure of the braking system.

Brake Squeal

The high performance brake system used on this vehicle is designed to provide optimal braking under all operating conditions. However, certain combinations of speed, braking forces and ambient conditions may cause the brakes to squeal.

Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS)

The anti-lock braking system (ABS) helps prevent the road wheels from locking and skidding during emergency braking. This also assists the driver in maintaining steering and directional stability.

If, in an emergency braking situation, the braking force applied begins to exceed the tyre to road adhesion, the ABS is activated to prevent the road wheels locking. When this happens a pulsating effect is felt through the brake pedal. This is a normal ABS effect.

Safety

In all cases it remains the drivers responsibility to drive safely according to the law and with due regard to prevailing conditions. The fact that a vehicle is equipped with ABS must never allow the driver to be tempted into taking risks which could affect his or her safety or that of other road users.

The addition of ABS cannot overcome the consequences of trying to stop in too short a distance, cornering at too high a speed, or the risk of aquaplaning (where the tyres are prevented from contacting the road surface by a layer of water).

The driver should always take road conditions into account. A slippery road surface always requires more braking distance for a given speed, even with ABS. Possible extensions of stopping distance compared to locked wheels may occur during ABS operation on slushy snow, gravel, sand or certain heavily corrugated or ridged warning sections of road surfaces.

If any braking system malfunction occurs, immediately have the Braking and ABS systems checked by your Aston Martin Dealer.

ABS Warning

⚠ Warning ⚠

If the ABS warning lamp illuminates, you should be aware that wheels could lock during extreme braking or when braking on slippery surfaces.

ABS is monitored for correct operation while the ignition is switched on. If a fault is detected, the ABS warning lamp (ABS) will illuminate and the ABS will be partly or fully disabled.

Normal braking will continue to function without ABS.

In the event of an ABS fault, consult your Aston Martin Dealer immediately.

Handbrake

Always fully apply the handbrake before leaving the vehicle.

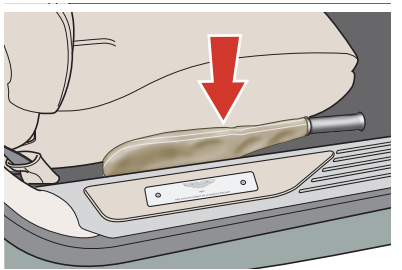
To apply the handbrake:

1. Press the footbrake pedal firmly.
2. While pressing the footbrake pedal, pull the handbrake lever up, smartly, to its fullest extent.

   Do not press the release button while pulling the handbrake lever up.
3. Allow the handbrake lever to lower.

If the ignition is on the handbrake warning light on the instrument cluster will illuminate, indicating that the handbrake is applied. (!) BRAKE

To release the handbrake:



1. Press the footbrake pedal firmly.
2. While pressing the footbrake pedal, pull the handbrake lever up until resistance is felt, then depress the release button and push the handbrake lever down.

If the handbrake lever is not fully off, the handbrake warning light (!) BRAKE will stay on.

Always check that the brake warning lamp is correctly extinguished before moving off. Do not attempt to drive the vehicle if the brake warning lamp remains on.

An audible warning will sound if the vehicle is moving and the handbrake is still applied.

- If the vehicle is parked on a hill and facing **uphill**, select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the kerb
- If the vehicle is parked on a hill and facing **downhill**, select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel towards the kerb

Dynamic Stability Control (DSC)

⚠ Warning ⚠

It is the drivers responsibility to drive safely according to the law and with due regard to prevailing conditions.

⚠ Warning ⚠

DSC must never allow the driver to be tempted into taking risks which could affect his or her safety or that of other road users. DSC cannot overcome consequences of applying too much engine power for prevailing conditions.

Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is a system designed to enhance driving safety by improving the vehicle handling when the tyres are at the limits of their grip capabilities. This is achieved through the reduction of engine torque and strategic application of the brakes at individual wheels.

Driver Interface and Control

The DSC system is switched 'On' when the engine is started. When the system is operating, the DSC warning lamp will flash.

DSC can be switched 'OFF' by pressing the DSC switch for a minimum of 4 seconds.



*The DSC button lamp and the DSC symbol (instrument pack) will illuminate continuously when the system is switched '**OFF**'.*

'DSC FUNCTION OFF' will be displayed in the message centre right to indicate that DSC is 'OFF'.

Press and release the DSC switch again to switch the DSC 'ON'.

Use tyres of the same manufacturer, brand, tread pattern and correct size specified for this vehicle on all four road wheels. Do not mix worn tyres.

The DSC may not operate correctly when using tyre chains or a temporary spare tyre.

If repair or replacement of the steering or other surrounding equipment is necessary, always refer to your Aston Martin Dealer. If the centre position of the steering deviates, the DSC may not operate correctly because there is a sensor in the steering which detects steering wheel position.

Fault Indication

A malfunction in the DSC control system will be indicated by the following:

- The DSC lamp in the instrument cluster will illuminate continuously
- A warning message will be displayed in the message centre right depending on the fault detected

If vehicle cruise control is engaged it will automatically disengage when traction control is operating.

Traction Control

⚠ Warning ⚠

It is the drivers responsibility to drive safely according to the law and with due regard to prevailing conditions.

⚠ Warning ⚠

Traction Control must never allow the driver to be tempted into taking risks which could affect his or her safety or that of other road users.

⚠ Warning ⚠

Traction Control cannot overcome consequences of applying too much engine power for prevailing conditions.

Traction control is a function of DSC, and is operated in association with the DSC system.

Traction control prevents excessive wheel-spin at standing starts, or during acceleration. Wheel-spin is usually caused by excessive use of the accelerator pedal, or slippery, loose or bumpy road surfaces.

To prevent excessive wheel-spin and maintain vehicle stability in such situations the traction control system will:

- Brake the driven-wheel when it starts to slip
- And / or adapt the engine torque to a level corresponding to the traction available on the road surface

These symptoms are normal and will clear as wheel spin is eliminated and normal engine power is restored.

During activation, the DSC warning lamp will flash. The driver may experience a loss in power or temporary 'misfire' as engine power is reduced.

If traction control cuts in when driving on extended icy or slippery surfaces, reduce engine power as necessary until the DSC warning lamp is extinguished.

Do not maintain engine power at such a level that traction control is activated for long periods (more than about one minute). This reduces fuel to the engine and may cause the exhaust catalysts to overheat. Overheating of the exhaust catalysts can destroy them.

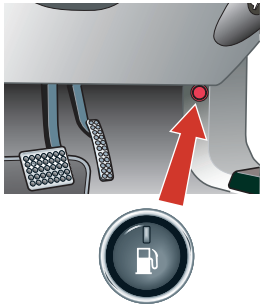
Traction control is always operational when DSC on.

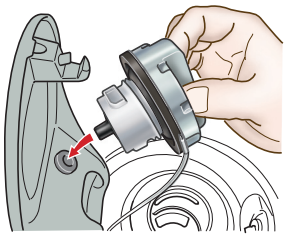
Fuel Filling

Open the fuel flap by pressing the fuel flap release switch.

The vehicle alarm must be off to enable the fuel flap release switch.

Rotate the cap anticlockwise past resistance, then lift off. Place the cap into it's holder.





Install the cap by turning clockwise past resistance, until three 'clicks' are felt as the cap is fully tightened. Close and latch the fuel flap.

The fuel tank filler neck has a restricted opening which will only accommodate the fuel supply nozzle of unleaded fuel pumps.

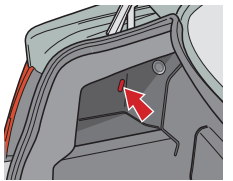
The fuel system will not permit overfill but there will be instances when the nozzle will shut off prematurely. If this happens wait 5 seconds after nozzle shut off before trying to re-initiate fill.

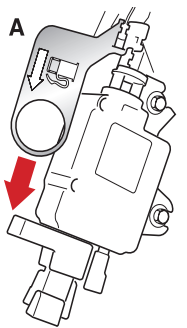
Fuel Cutoff

In the event of a vehicle accident the vehicle will enter Crash mode. Power to the fuel pumps will terminate, thereby reducing fire risk.

Filler Flap Emergency Release

If the filler flap will not open when the release switch is pressed, open the filler flap manually (Refer to 'Filler Flap Emergency Release', page 4.16).





Catalytic Converters

⚠ Warning ⚠

Do not park over dry grass, leaves or other combustible material. Significant fire risk exists because of residual heat in the catalytic converters.

⚠ Warning ⚠

Do not drive through deep water. Rapid cooling of catalysts may cause them to break up.

Catalytic convertors convert harmful exhaust gasses into less noxious substances and so reduce environmental pollution.

They operate at high temperatures and continue to radiate a considerable amount of heat after turning off the engine.

Leaded fuel will cause irreparable damage to catalytic converters. If leaded fuel is inadvertently added to the fuel tank **do not start the engine, do not drive the vehicle**. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer immediately.

Rear Parking Assist

⚠ Warning ⚠

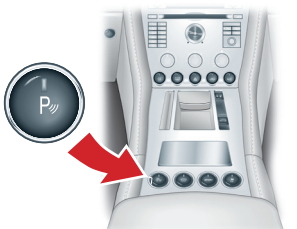
Rear parking assist does not replace need for total vigilance and caution when parking or reversing.

Rear parking assist assists in detecting obstructions as the vehicle is reversed towards them. The system is active when reverse gear is selected. When the system is operating an intermittent 'beep' signal will be heard. The 'beep' increases in persistence as the vehicle reverses to an obstruction.

The 'beeps' start at approx. 1.7 m (5.5 ft.) from any obstruction. The 'beep' becomes continuous at distances less than 30 cm (1 ft.).

*If reversing into a confined area, i.e. a home garage, the rear parking assist **outer** sensors will detect the side walls and, after 3 seconds, the 'Beep' sequence will stop. As reversing continues the rear parking assist **inner** sensors will detect the rear wall / obstruction and the 'Beep' sequence will start again.*

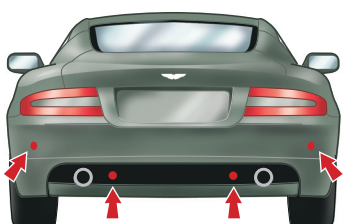
Press the parking assist button to disable rear parking assist. The rear parking assist button will illuminate when the system is **disabled**.



When parking or reversing make full use of rearward vision and all mirrors to be aware of persons or objects in the vicinity of the vehicle. Take appropriate measures to protect them from danger.

In heavy rain or similar adverse conditions, the rear parking assist sensors may not always be able to accurately measure distance to close objects. A fully laden vehicle or irregular obstacles may also cause inaccurate measurements.

The parking sensors should be kept clear of dirt, snow etc. to ensure clean signals and accurate distance monitoring.



Front and Rear Parking Assist (Option)

It remains the driver's responsibility to detect obstacles and estimate the car's distance from them. Some overhanging objects, barriers, thin obstructions or painted surfaces which could possibly cause damage to the vehicle may not be detected by the system. Always be vigilant when reversing.

The parking assist system provides an audible warning, when driving forwards or rearwards, if objects are detected within range of the vehicle.

If, for example, you are driving within a confined space such as a home garage, the outer sensors will detect the side walls and after 3 seconds will switch the tone off. However, as movement continues, the inner sensors will eventually detect the rear wall and will start the tone again.

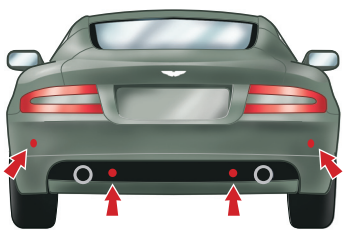
The rear sensors are not active when the gear selector is in neutral, therefore care should be taken if moving the vehicle as the tone will not sound.

Do not clean the sensors with abrasive or sharp objects.

For reliable operation, the sensors in the front and rear bumpers should be kept free from ice, frost and grime.

When using a high pressure spray the sensors should only be sprayed briefly and not from a distance of less than 200 mm (8 inches). Do not clean the sensors with abrasive materials.



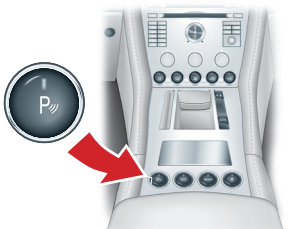


Operation

The Parking assist system defaults to inactive when the ignition is switched on.

The system becomes active when reverse gear is selected, or if the Parking Assist switch is pressed at speeds below 15 km/h (9 m.p.h.).

The system will switch off when the vehicle moves forwards above 15 km/h (9 m.p.h.).



The parking switch LED will illuminate when the system is turned on. The LED will blink if a fault is detected in the system.

In heavy rain or similar adverse conditions, the rear parking assist sensors may not always be able to accurately measure distance to close objects. A fully laden vehicle or irregular obstacles may also cause inaccurate measurements.

If the system has a fault when engaging reverse gear or turning on the ignition, then a single three second tone will be heard (only once per ignition cycle) and the parking assist switch LED will blink. The system is automatically disabled when a fault is detected.

Parking assist may sound spurious tones if it detects an ultrasonic frequency using the same band as the sensors.

If an obstacle is detected at the front or rear of the vehicle, a series of beeps will be heard from the front or rear speaker respectively, which increases in rate as the vehicle nears the obstacle.

The beep becomes a continuous tone when an obstacle is detected at or within approximately 300 mm (12 inches) from the rear or 250 mm (10 inches) from the front of the vehicle.

Driving Techniques

Procedures for driving this vehicle may be unfamiliar to many new owners. Please take time to safely acquire the necessary new driving skills. Practise in safe, lower speed conditions before investigating the high performance potential of the vehicle. Please ensure a safe and enjoyable entry into this new phase of Aston Martin motoring.

Performance Driving Courses are available to enable customers not only to understand the control functions of their vehicle but also the basic principles of Performance Driving.

Please contact your Aston Martin Dealer for further information.

Wet Conditions

When driving in wet conditions, water can build up under your tyres so that they ride on a layer of water. This is called aquaplaning or hydroplaning. When this happens, you have little or no control.

Aquaplaning is more prone to happening at higher road speeds if there is a lot of water on the road and particularly if the tyres are also under inflated or approaching minimum tread depth.

It is important to take bends or curves at a safe, reasonable speed, particularly when driving on wet or slippery road surfaces.

Slow down when it is raining.

This vehicle should not be driven through water depths of up to 175 mm (7 in) above 50 km/h (30 m.p.h.) or through water depths over 175mm (7 in) above idle speed.

Water depths of 200 mm (8 in) or more should not be traversed as this may cause extensive damage to the engine.

Running-In

This vehicle is fully hot tested during manufacture and no special running-in procedures are necessary. Nevertheless it is prudent to limit engine loads (e.g. by accelerating gently and by using lower gears on steep hills or when negotiating tight turns) during the first 1,600 km (1,000 mile).

Overspeed Warning 'Gong' (Middle East only)

If vehicle speed reaches 120 km/h (74.5 m.p.h.) a warning 'gong' will sound. This warning will continue until either the vehicle speed goes beyond 130 km/h (81 m.p.h.) or the vehicle speed falls below 117 km/h (73 m.p.h.).

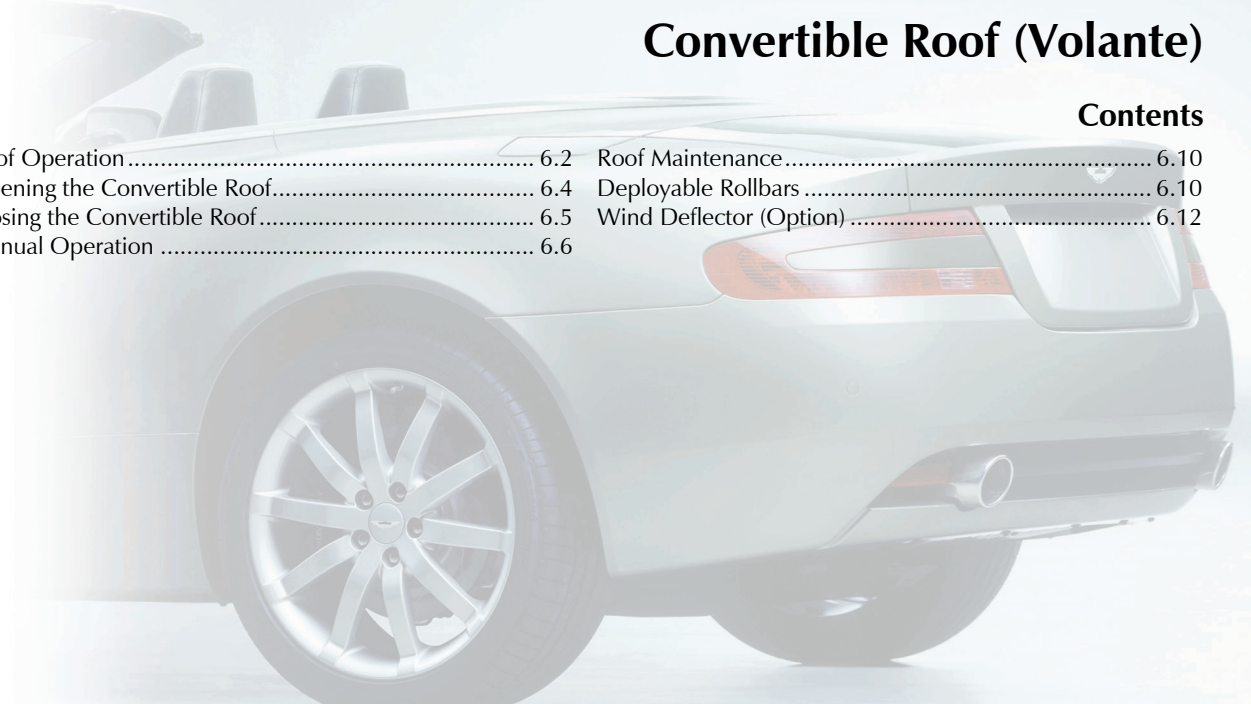
If the vehicle speed has increased beyond 130Km/h (81 m.p.h.) the warning 'gong' will not sound again until the vehicle speed has fallen below 120 km/h (74.5 m.p.h.) and then increased to 120km/h (74.5 m.p.h.) or greater.

ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN

Convertible Roof (Volante)

Contents

Roof Operation 6.2
Opening the Convertible Roof 6.4
Closing the Convertible Roof 6.5
Manual Operation 6.6
Roof Maintenance 6.10
Deployable Rollbars 6.10
Wind Deflector (Option) 6.12



Roof Operation

⚠ *Warning* ⚠
Misuse of the Convertible Roof switch, especially by children, can result in injury due to entrapment in the Convertible Roof mechanism and locking points.

⚠ *Warning* ⚠
Before closing or opening the Convertible Roof, ensure that all occupants are clear of the Convertible Roof linkage, the windscreen frame, door windows and rear quarter windows.

Aston Martin recommend that the Convertible Roof is not operated at temperatures below 0°C (32°F).

Before closing or opening the Convertible Roof, ensure that there are no objects placed on the rear sloping deck area which could interfere with the folded, stored Convertible Roof, especially the heated rear windscreen glass. Even small objects can cause damage.

Ensure that the Convertible Roof is always fully closed or fully opened.

Do not store objects / items in the Convertible Roof storage area.

Any objects / items stored there may cause damage to the Convertible Roof when attempting to open it. Even small objects can cause damage.

Do not attempt to open the Convertible Roof if any objects are laying on top of the Convertible Roof.

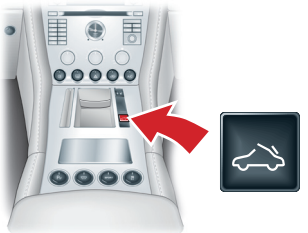
Continuous use of the Convertible Roof without the engine running will cause the vehicle battery to rapidly discharge.

Avoid repetitive use of the Convertible Roof. This may cause the operating system to over heat and engage the thermal cut out. If this happens, wait ten minutes for the operating system to cool down before operating the roof.

Due to wind pressure when driving at very high speeds the door windows may not close correctly.

The Convertible Roof operation switch is located on the centre console.

If at any time during the opening or closing of the Convertible Roof the switch is released – the Convertible Roof will stop immediately.





'**Roof Movement Paused**' will appear in the message display and a continuous audible warning will sound until the Convertible Roof continues to open or close.

As soon as it is safe to do so continue the roof movement. If the roof is left in 'Pause', after a short time hydraulic pressure will be lost. The roof and tonneau lid will relax and, gently, fall back.

Conditions for Operating the Roof

- The boot must be shut

The boot will lock and will remain inhibited during Convertible Roof opening / closing operations.

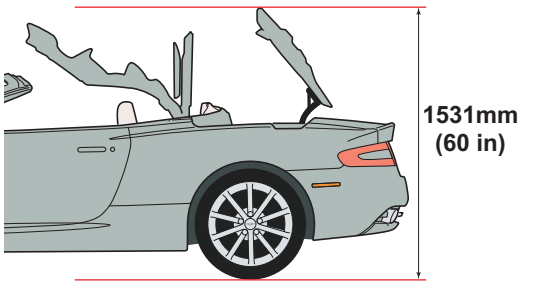
- The ignition must be at position 'II' (engine running or not).
- The vehicle speed must be at '0' km/h

⚠ Warning ⚠

Only operate the roof when the vehicle is stationary with the handbrake applied, and the gear selector in 'P' or 'N' (Automatic) or Neutral (Manual).

- Sufficient headroom is available for the Convertible Roof to close or open

Minimum headroom required to close or open the Convertible Roof.



Moving Off While Operating the Convertible Roof

⚠ Warning ⚠

Keep the vehicle road speed down to a minimum until the Convertible Roof has completed it's operation.

If the vehicle starts to move while the Convertible Roof is being closed / opened, Convertible Roof movement will continue, while the close / open switch remains pressed, until the Convertible Roof has locked in the closed or opened position. '**Road Speed Exceeded for Roof**' will display in the message centre.

Operating the Convertible Roof while Driving

If attempting to close / open the Convertible Roof while driving the warning message '**Road Speed Exceeded for Roof**' will display in the message centre and Convertible Roof movement will not be allowed until the vehicle speed has fallen to 0 km/h.

Rear Quarter Windows

The rear quarter windows only operate as part of the Convertible Roof movement sequence. They can not be operated separately.

Opening the Convertible Roof

⚠ Warning ⚠

Roof movement has not finished and locked until 'Roof Movement Complete' appears in the message display.

Ensure that there is sufficient headroom for the Convertible Roof to be closed (1531mm (60 in)).

Push the Convertible Roof switch forwards and hold until '**Roof Movement Complete**' appears in the message display.

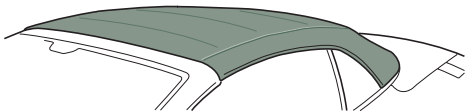




If the door windows are required to be closed continue to press the switch after '**Roof Movement Complete**' appears until the door windows have closed.

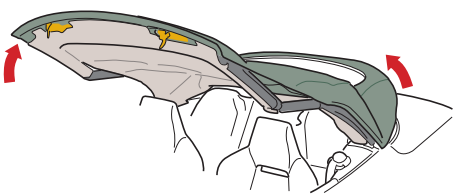
Open (1)

If raised the door windows drop. The rear quarter windows will drop.



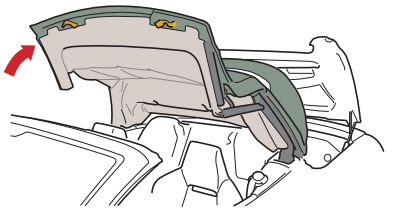
Open (2)

Roof unlocks and starts to open.



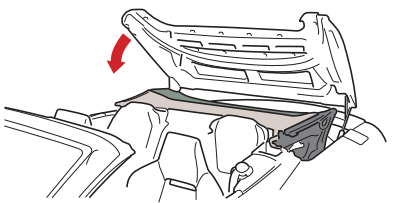
Open (3)

The tonneau lid opens.



Open (4)

The Convertible Roof folds away and the tonneau lid closes.



Closing the Convertible Roof

⚠ Warning ⚠

Roof movement has not finished and locked until 'Roof Movement Complete' appears in the message display.

Ensure that there is sufficient headroom for the Convertible Roof to be closed (1531mm (60 in)).

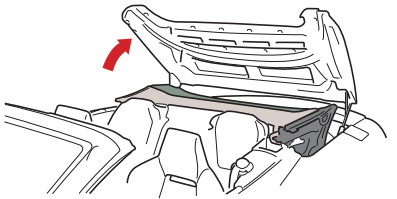
Pull the Convertible Roof switch rearwards and hold until '**Roof Movement Complete**' appears in the message display.





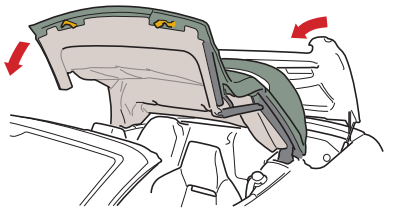
Close (1)

The tonneau lid opens and the Convertible Roof unfolds.



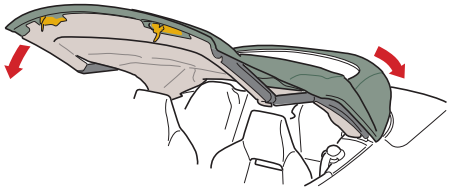
Close (2)

The tonneau lid closes.



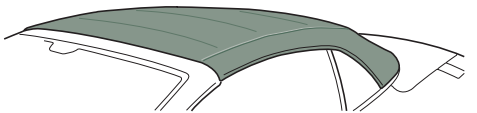
Close (3)

The Convertible Roof closes.



Close (4)

The Convertible Roof locks and the rear quarter windows rise. Door widows rise if required.



Manual Operation

In the unlikely event of the Convertible Roof failing during closing or opening (after the locks have released), the Convertible Roof can be manually closed and locked.

Vehicle Security.
If the Convertible Roof fails always close and lock the Convertible Roof.

Do not open the Convertible Roof. Roof and Convertible Roof cover locks will not be available.

*The message '**Roof Fail**' will show in the message centre right.*

Closing the Roof Manually

The assistance of a second person may be required to close the Convertible Roof manually.

If the Convertible Roof fails, remove the ignition key and wait for a minimum of five seconds.

⚠ Warning ⚠

Keep fingers clear of the Convertible Roof linkage when moving the Convertible Roof manually.

During this time the Convertible Roof hydraulics will relax allowing manual movement of the Convertible Roof. Some hydraulic fluid resistance will still be present in the operating rams. It may take considerable effort to fully close the Convertible Roof manually.

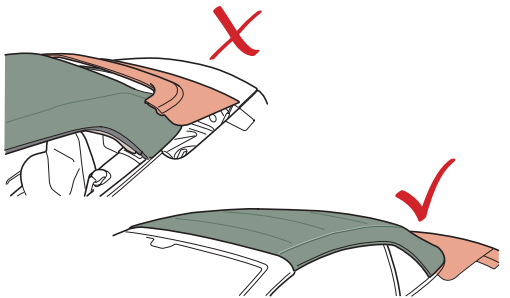
If the tonneau lid has unlocked and the Convertible Roof rear is underneath.

Manually lift the tonneau lid. Continue to hold the tonneau lid while closing the Convertible Roof. When the Convertible Roof rear has cleared the tonneau lid, let the tonneau lid slowly fall to close. Slowly raise the Convertible Roof to meet the top of the windscreen. The rear of the Convertible Roof will lay in position on the edge of the tonneau lid.

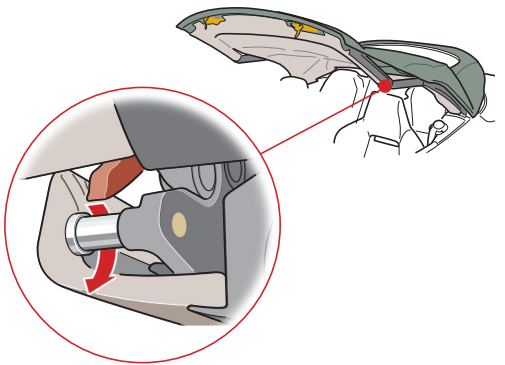
Do not allow the tonneau lid to rest on the Convertible Roof fabric.

If the tonneau lid is closed with the Convertible Roof rear on top.

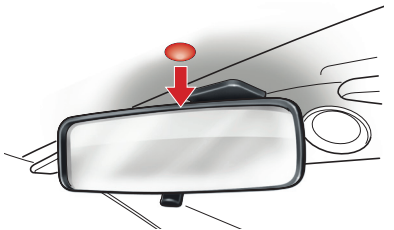
Manually raise the Convertible Roof to the fully closed position.



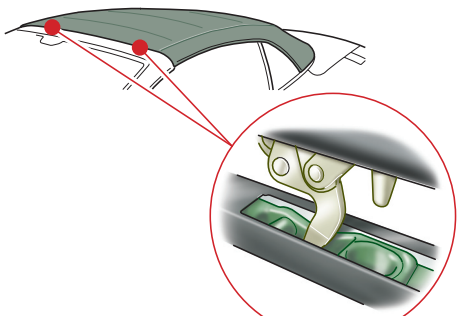
Ensure that the hook on the last Convertible Roof joint engages correctly on both sides.



Remove the trim plug.

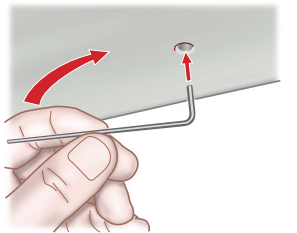


Ensure the two lock arms are located in their catches.



Locking the Convertible Roof manually may require the assistance of a second person to push down so the catches engage while the allen key is turned.

Using the allen key provided in the vehicle tool kit, lock the Convertible Roof in position.



Many turns of the allen key will be required to lock the Convertible Roof.

Continue to turn the allen key until no more movement is possible.

'Roof Movement Paused' will appear in the message display and a continuous 'beep' will activate until the Convertible Roof has been locked.



Rear Quarter Windows

Depending on the reason why the Convertible Roof fails, the rear quarter windows may not close when closing the Convertible Roof manually.

When the Convertible Roof has been manually closed and locked, turn the ignition key to position 'II'. Attempt to close the rear quarter windows by operating the Convertible Roof close switch.



ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN

Roof Maintenance

If the Convertible Roof is left for prolonged periods in the opened position (folded), in certain circumstances permanent soiling along folds may occur in the Convertible Roof fabric.

Do not leave the Convertible Roof in the opened (folded) position for longer than necessary.

Do not use automatic vehicle washes. Brushes, detergents and pressurised water jets may damage the Convertible Roof fabric.

Do not use power washers. Jets of water may damage the weather seals and the Convertible Roof fabric.

Do not use spot cleaners, chemical diluents or any organic cleaners. If in doubt, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

Roof Fabric Maintenance

(Refer to 'Convertible Roof Fabric (Volante)', page 12.42)

Deployable Rollbars

⚠ Warning ⚠

Do not place any objects on the top of the deployable rollbar covers behind the rear seat backs.

⚠ Warning ⚠

Do not allow any person to sit on the deployable rollbar covers at any time.

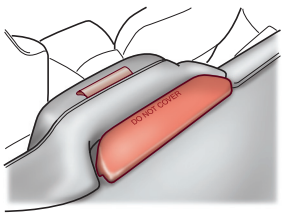
⚠ Warning ⚠

Do not attempt to service or modify the deployable rollbar system.

The Volante is equipped with a deployable rollbar system, which is in addition to and independent of the airbag system.

The deployable rollbar system and the airbag system react independently. The deployable rollbars and the airbags may deploy together or alone, depending on the type of impact.

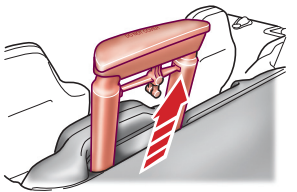
The deployable rollbar system comprises an electronic roll sensor unit integrated into the main crash sensor and two 'U' shaped roll bars, concealed behind the rear seat, which will deploy in the unlikely event of the vehicle rolling over.



The electronic roll sensor constantly monitors the vehicle attitude and road loads.

On sensing an impending roll over situation the electronic roll sensor sends a signal to the deployable rollbars, triggering a release.

The deployable rollbars then extend upward.



⚠ Warning ⚠

If the roof is closed the deployable rollbars will break through the rear glass.

Extreme manoeuvres may cause the system to predict a roll over and deploy the rollbars for protection of the occupants. If such driving events are anticipated by the customer (e.g. Track day driving) the Convertible Roof should be retracted to allow the rollbars to deploy without damaging the vehicle.

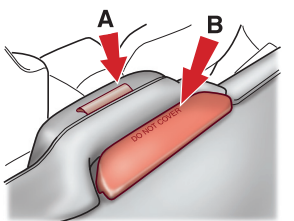
⚠ Warning ⚠

Do not attempt to reset the deployable rollbar system after it has deployed. It is a 'single use' system, if reset it will not deploy a second time.

If the deployable rollbar system has been deployed, proceed to your nearest Aston Martin Dealer.

Warning Labels

The following warning labels are located on the deployable rollbar system,



***A* - 'Rollbar'**

***B* - 'Do Not Cover'**

Wind Deflector (Option)

A wind deflector can be installed to enhance comfort when driving with the Convertible Roof down.

- Wind noise and turbulence are greatly reduced
- Heat retention is increased, offering open air cruising on colder days
- It easily installs to existing mounts within your vehicle
- The wind deflector can be left in place with the Convertible Roof closed or opened and stores easily within the boot
- Easily folded and stowed away when not used

Take care when adjusting the driver or passenger seat position with the wind deflector installed. Ensure that the seats do not come into contact the wind deflector.

The wind deflector is not designed as a load carrier. Do not place objects / items on the wind deflector in either the closed or opened position.

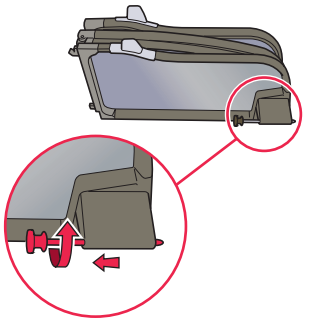
Storage

When the wind deflector is not required, remove it from the vehicle and place it in it's storage bag. Place the storage bag in the vehicle boot.

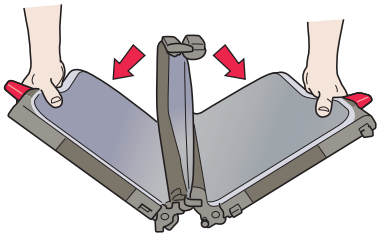
Installation

1. Remove the deflector from it's storage bag.

   Ensure that the location pins are retracted. If not retracted pull the pins back and twist (left or right) to lock.

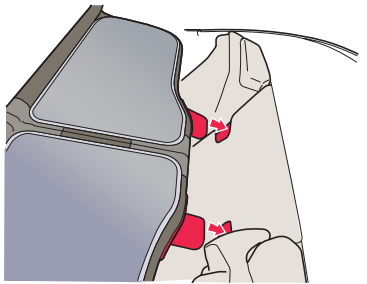


2. Unfold.



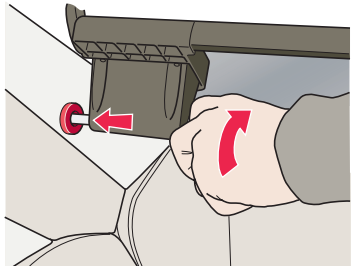
3. Open out and ‘snap’ connect.

4. Locate the two tabs in to the openings provided in the rear seat backs.



5. With the tabs located line up the location pins and locate the two locking pins either side in the openings provided.

   Twist the pins (left or right) to release and ensure they locate correctly.



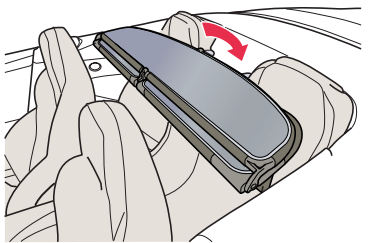
Removal

Remove the wind deflector from the vehicle by reversing the procedure to install.

Operation

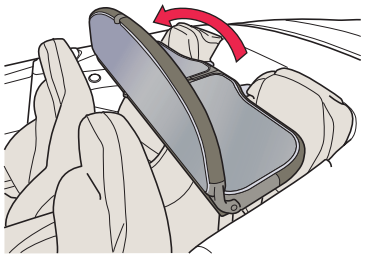
Lowered

Grab the top of the raised section and lower until a locating ‘click’ is heard.



Raised

Grab the rear of the top section and pull upwards (90°)untill a locating ‘click’ is heard.



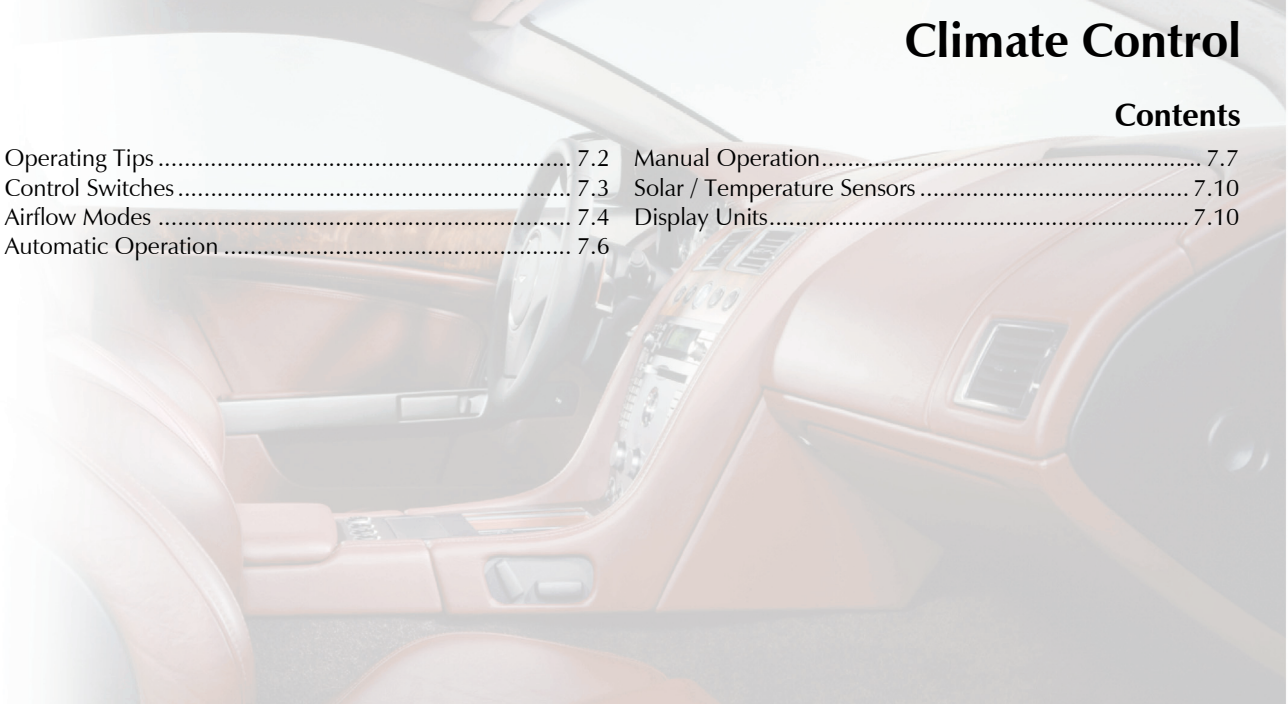
ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

Climate Control

Contents

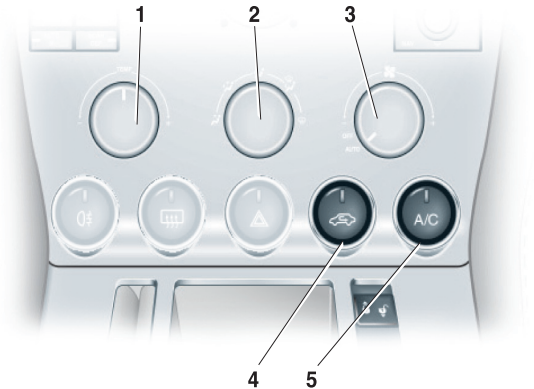
Operating Tips 7.2
Control Switches 7.3
Airflow Modes 7.4
Automatic Operation 7.6
Manual Operation 7.7
Solar / Temperature Sensors 7.10
Display Units 7.10



Operating Tips

- A solar sensor is installed on top of the instrument panel, this should not be covered when driving
- The intake grille of the in-car temperature sensor is located in the driver's knee bolster, close to the centre console. To ensure optimum temperature control this grille should not be obstructed
- Moisture which forms on the evaporator in the air conditioning unit is discharged via a drain tube onto the road. After stopping, small puddles of water may form underneath the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a system malfunction
- Operate the climate control system with the engine running
- Clear all obstructions like leaves, snow and ice from the bonnet and the air inlet in the front grille to improve the system efficiency
- Windows may fog up easily in humid weather. Use the climate control system to demist the windows
- To help demist the windows, operate the air conditioner to dehumidify the air
- Use the 'outside air' position in normal conditions. The 'recirculated air' position should be used temporarily when driving on dusty roads or for quick cooling / heating of the interior
- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows to let warm air escape, then close the windows and run the climate control system
- Run the climate control system at least once a month to keep internal parts lubricated
- Have the climate control system checked before the weather gets hot. If the climate control system is low on refrigerant or has a malfunction, consult your Aston Martin Dealer
- The vehicle is equipped with a pollen filter. It is necessary to change the filter periodically as indicated in scheduled maintenance. Consult your Aston Martin Dealer

Control Switches



(1) Temperature Control Dial - Set the required in vehicle temperature. Turn clockwise for hot and anticlockwise for cold. The selected temperature is displayed on the Infotainment centre screen.

(2) Air Flow Dial - Select the required airflow. The selected air flow mode is displayed on the Infotainment centre screen.

(3) Fan Speed Dial - Turn the fan speed dial from 'Off' to set the required fan speed (clockwise for fast speed and anticlockwise for low speed). The fan speed is displayed on the Infotainment centre screen. Rotate to 'Auto' for fully automatic air conditioning operation.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not select re-circulated air in cold or rainy weather, it may cause the glass to mist up.

* On LHD vehicles these switches are on the LH side of the centre stack.

(4) Air Circulation Button* - Controls the source of air entering the vehicle. Press to select re-circulated air (a lamp on the button illuminates to indicate that re-circulated air is selected). Use this position when going through tunnels, driving in congested traffic (high engine exhaust areas) or when maximum cooling is required.

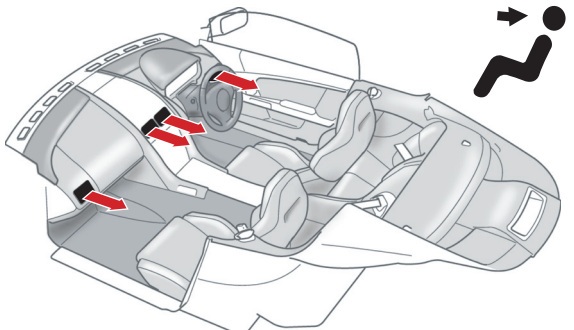
On start up the default position is outside air selected. Use this position for normal conditions and demisting.

(5) A/C Button* - Push the button to turn the air conditioning on (an indicator lamp on the button will illuminate when the fan control dial (3) is on). Push the button again to turn the air conditioning off

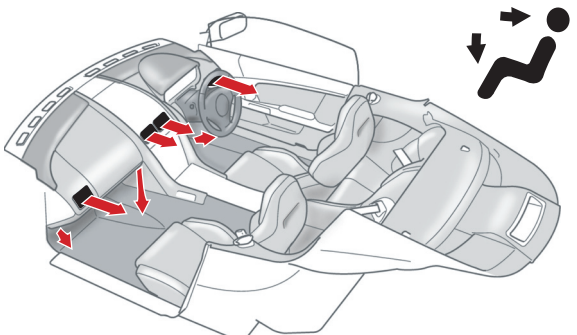
Air conditioning may not function when the outside temperature approaches 0°C (32°F). (Indicator remains on even when system is off.)

Airflow Modes

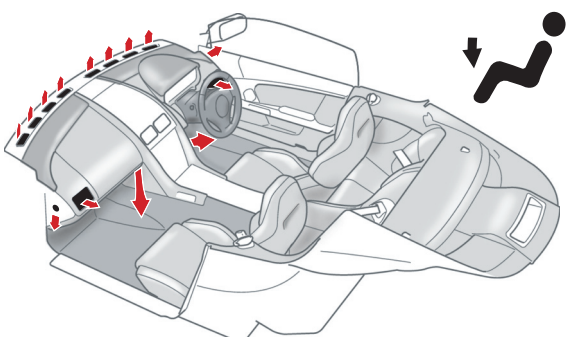
Face Only



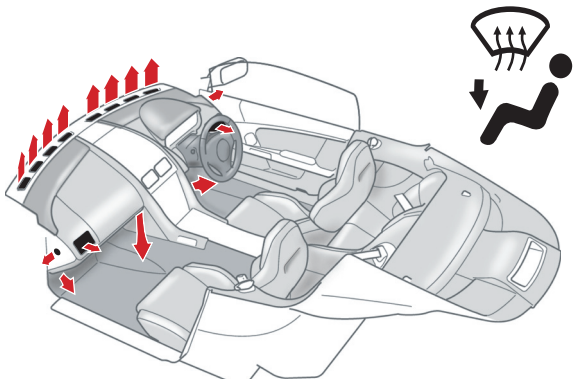
Face and Feet



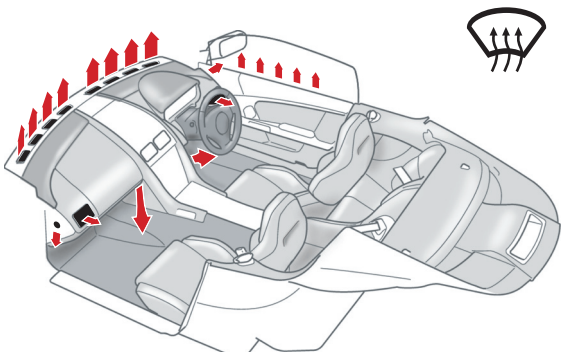
Feet Only



Defroster and Feet

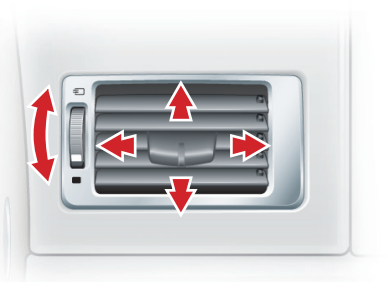


Defroster Only



Adjusting the Vents

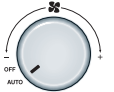
To adjust the air flow vents:



Automatic Operation

When using the air conditioner, mist may come out from the vents. This is not a sign of trouble but a result of humid air being suddenly cooled.

Turn the fan speed dial to **Auto** and set the required in-vehicle temperature (read the actual temperature setting in the Infotainment centre screen). The **A/C** button lamp will illuminate.



Adjustments to fan speed, air flow and air recirculation will be made automatically according to the set temperature and interior / exterior conditions.

*When resetting climate control functions other than the fan speed, fan speed will remain set as in automatic mode. Turn the fan speed dial from **'Auto'** to set the required fan speed.*

The **A/C** button lamp will switch off.

Automatic Windscreen Defrosting and Demisting

Vehicles not installed with heated front windscreen (option).

To defrost or demist the windscreen on vehicle start up in extreme cold weather conditions, run the engine at 1500 rpm.

1. Turn the fan speed dial to the 'Auto' position.
2. Turn the air flow mode dial to the position.

If the engine is cold the fan speed will be low for a few minutes until the engine warms up, then the fan speed will increase.

In the position, outside air intake is automatically selected and air conditioning is automatically started. Recirculated air cannot be selected.

The heated front windscreen (option) will activate and remain on for 6.5 minutes.

Automatic defrost and demist will remain active until the air flow mode dial is turned from the *position*.

*If **'Auto'** mode is selected and the air flow mode dial is in a setting other than , and the heated front windscreen button is operated, then auto defrost mode will be initiated for a period of two minutes. If the heated front windscreen is turned off within the two minute period, then the auto defrost mode will cease and **'Auto'** mode will resume.*

Manual Operation

When using the air conditioner, mist may come out from the vents. This is not a sign of trouble but a result of humid air being suddenly cooled.

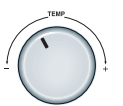
Heating

1. Select the required air flow.

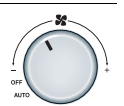


2. Set the required temperature.

   The vehicle heater will continue to produce the selected temperature regardless of in vehicle conditions



3. Set the required fan speed.



4. If dehumidifying is required, press the **A/C** button.

Setting the temperature to Max., high or low will not provide the required temperature at a faster rate.

To prevent cool air blowing from the vents when heating immediately after starting a cold engine, the amount of airflow is reduced until the air warms up.

If the windscreen fogs up easily, set the mode selector switch to the  *position.*

If cooler air is required at face level, set the mode selector switch at the  *position and adjust the temperature control dial to maintain maximum comfort.*

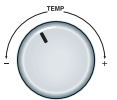
The air to the floor is warmer than air to the face (except when the temperature control dial is set at the extreme hot or cold position).

Cooling (With A/C)

1. Select the required air flow.



2. Set the required temperature.



3. Set the required fan speed.



4. Press the **A/C** button (the button lamp will illuminate).

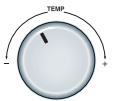
5. Adjust the fan speed and temperature to maintain maximum comfort.
6. To cease dehumidifying press A/C (the button lamp will switch off).

When maximum cooling is required, set the temperature to the extreme cold position and set the air intake to the recirculated air position, then set a fast fan speed.

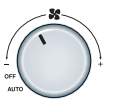
If warmer air is required at floor level, set the mode selector switch to the position and adjust the temperature to maintain Maximum comfort. The air to the floor is warmer than air to the face (except when the temperature control dial is set at the extreme hot or cold position).

Ventilation

1. Turn the air flow dial to .
2. Press the **Air Recirculation** button to select outside air (the button lamp will switch off).
3. Set the required temperature.



4. Set the required fan speed.



Windscreen Defrosting and Demisting

Vehicles not installed with heated front windscreen (option).

To defrost or demist the windscreen on vehicle start up in extreme cold weather conditions, run the engine at 1500 rpm.

1. Turn the air flow mode dial to the position.

In the position, outside air intake is automatically selected and air conditioning is automatically started. Recirculated air cannot be selected.

If the engine is cold the fan speed will be low for a few minutes until the engine warms up, then the fan speed will increase.

2. Set the required temperature and fan speed.

For maximum defrosting and demisting set the temperature and fan speed dials to max.

The heated front windscreen (option) will activate and remain on for 6.5 minutes.

To turn off windscreen defrosting and demisting rotate the air flow mode dial away from the position. Set the climate controls to reach the required in vehicle conditions.

⚠ Warning ⚠

Using the position with the temperature set at cold may cause the inside of the windscreen to mist up. Set the temperature to hot or warm position when using the position.

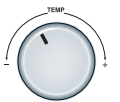
Dehumidifying (With A/C)

Operate the air conditioner in cool or cold weather to help demist the windscreen and side windows.

1. Select the required air flow.



2. Press the **Air Recirculation** button to select recirculated air (the button lamp will illuminate).
3. Set the required temperature.



4. Set the required fan speed.



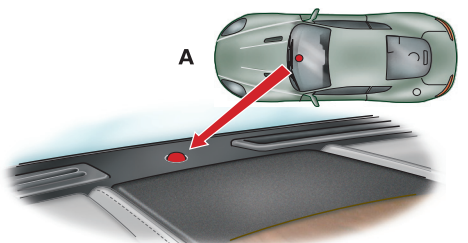
5. Press the **A/C** button (the button lamp will illuminate).
6. To cease dehumidifying press **A/C** (the button lamp will switch off).

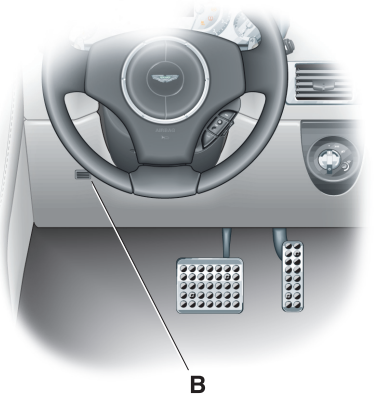
Solar / Temperature Sensors

The automatic air conditioner function measures inside and outside temperatures, and sunlight. It then sets temperatures inside the passenger compartment accordingly. To ensure effective operation do not obscure the following sensors.

A **-** Solar sensor.

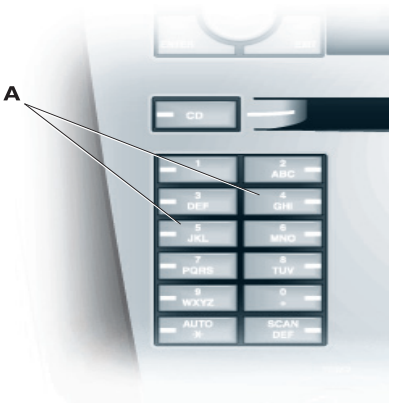
B **-** In-vehicle temperature sensor.





Display Units

To change the display units from °C to °F or °F to °C.



Press and hold in buttons 4 and 5 (A), of the centre stack key pad, while turning the ignition key from position 'I' through to position 'II'.

Audio

Contents

Introduction 8.2
Control Panel 8.3
Battery Protection Mode 8.5
Audio Functions 8.5
Radio Functions 8.7
Radio Data System – RDS 8.9
News Broadcasts 8.10
Traffic Information 8.11
Radio Text 8.12
Programme Type (PTY) 8.13
Automatic Frequency (AF) Updating 8.14
Regional Radio Program 8.14
Enhanced Other Networks (EON) 8.15
Resetting Radio Functions 8.15
FM Menu 8.16
AM Menu 8.16
CD Changer 8.17
CD Changer Menu 8.21

Introduction

Audio is an integrated part of the Infotainment centre system along with 'in-vehicle' telephone system (option) and Satellite Navigation system functions. The infotainment system can be used easily and conveniently using the common control panel. The control panel display indicates the present function.

There is no external 'mast' type aerial. The aerial is incorporated into the composite boot lid, resulting in a cleaner style.

There are three levels of audio system.

Linn 128W Audio System (Standard)

Features an in-dash 6 CD autochanger, 2 door-mounted speakers (each with mid-range and tweeter units) as well as a rear-mounted bass reinforcement speaker.

Linn 260W Audio System with LIMBIK 5.1 (Option)

Features the following additional specification, over and above the standard unit;

- Linn LIMBIK 5.1 Surround-Sound system
- Two additional rear-environment speakers
- Facia-mounted coaxial centre-fill speaker

Linn 950W Audio System with Dolby Pro Logic II (Option)

Features the following additional specification, over and above the standard unit;

- Two additional rear-environment speakers (each with mid-range and tweeter units)
- Facia-mounted coaxial centre-fill speakers
- Dolby Pro Logic II Surround Sound system
- 200W Servo-controlled bass reinforcement loudspeaker
- Switch-mode power supply for higher quality and power

Control Panel



(1) Enter - Select in the menu, activate a selection or activate the telephone from stand-by mode.



(2) AM / FM - Switch between FM1, FM2 and AM.



(3) Power - Press for audio On / Off.

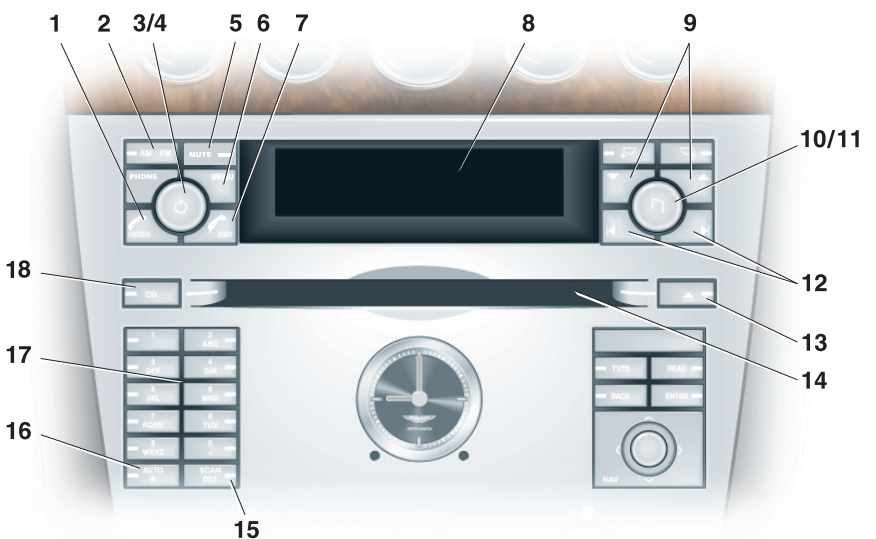


(4) Volume - Rotate for volume control.



(5) Mute - Press and release to mute the audio system / pause a CD at any time. Press and release again to unmute

Turning the  dial left or right will also unmute the audio / CD.





(6) Menu - Opens the main menu.



(7) Exit - Scroll back in the menu, cancel a selection, put the telephone (option) in stand-by mode, or erase the previous character when entering text and numbers.

(8) Display - Presents options, menus and information.



(9) Navigation buttons - Scroll up / down in the menus or scroll forwards / back when entering text and digits or select preset stations.



(10) Sound - Press to select sound settings. Rotate to set.



(11) Tuning - Turn to manually search stations, change tracks (CD) or scroll up / down in the menu.



(12) Search - Press left or right once to auto search the next station. Press and hold (left or right) to manually select a station.



(13) Eject - CD.

(14) Opening for insert / eject - CD.



(15) Scan - Automatic station search.



(16) Auto - Find and store the strongest stations.



(17) Buttons 0 – 9 - Station presets, CD changer position, number / character buttons for the telephone (option) and menu short-cuts.



(18) CD mode - CD.

Battery Protection Mode

Using the vehicle electrical systems, i.e. the infotainment system, with the ignition key at position 'I' (engine off) will drain the battery charge. Eventually the battery will drain to such a low level that it will not start the engine.

Replace the battery as soon as possible, if the battery is not capable of starting the engine.

To avoid this happening, a series of safety mechanisms shut down non-essential electrical systems before excessive battery drain takes place.

Warning messages will appear indicating the state of the battery charge.

(Refer to 'Battery Protection Mode', page 12.28).

Audio Functions

Audio On / Off

Press the  button to switch the audio system on / off.

If the audio system is active when the ignition is switched off, it will reactivate automatically when the car is restarted.

Selecting Audio Mode

Press the 

button repeatedly to shift between FM1, FM2 and AM. The selected audio mode is shown in the display.

Volume Control

Turn the volume knob clockwise or anticlockwise to increase or lower the volume. Volume control is infinitely variable.

Volume Mute

The audio volume will be muted if the in-car phone (option) or the Bluetooth system is in use or a Satellite Navigation guidance message activates.

Pause Mode (CD Player)

When the volume is at zero, the CD player switches to pause mode. Reactivate the player by turning up the volume.

Volume Control for TP, PTY, News and Alarm

If a CD is playing when the radio receives a traffic bulletin, the CD player enters pause mode. The message is played at the volume selected for that type of message. It then returns to the CD player function. If the volume is adjusted while the bulletin is played, the new volume is saved and used for the next bulletin.

Sound Setting

Press the  button repeatedly until you reach the function you wish to set. Turn the dial to set the sound.

Bass - Set Bass

Treble - Set Treble

Fader - Balance between the front and rear speakers (option)

Balance - Balance between the right and left-hand speakers

Sub Woofer - Level for Sub Woofer speaker (option)

Centre - Level for centre speaker (option)

Surround - Level for surround sound (option)

Setting the Surround Sound

1. Press 

.
2. Select the menu for the present sound source and press 

.
3. Select ‘Audio settings’ in the menu and press 

.
4. Select ‘Surround AM / FM’ or ‘Surround CD’ and press 

.
5. Select ‘Pro Logic II’, ‘3 channel stereo’ or ‘Off’ and press 

.

The symbol Dolby PL II is shown in the display if Pro Logic II has been selected. 3 CH is shown in the display if 3 channel stereo has been selected. Off means the audio system is in normal stereo mode.

DOLBY SURROUND PRO LOGIC II
Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. “Dolby”, “Pro Logic”, and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

Bass Speaker – Sub-Bass

Gives a fuller sound and deeper bass to the system.

1. Press MENU.
2. Select the menu for the present sound source and press ENTER.
3. Select ‘Audio settings...’.
4. Select ‘subwoofer’ and press ENTER to active / deactivate.

Radio Functions

Automatic Station Search

1. Select radio mode AM, FM1 or FM2 using the AM FM button.
2. Briefly press ◀◀ ▶▶ (forward or back) to search for the next strong station.
3. Press one of the buttons again to make a new search.

Manual Station Searching

There are two ways of searching for a station manually.

- Turn the tuning dial (10) to find the required frequency
- Press the  buttons (forward or back) and hold it in. The radio scans slowly in the selected direction and increases tempo after a few seconds. Release the button when the desired frequency appears in the display

If the frequency needs adjusting, press one of the buttons briefly.

Storing Stations

To store a selected station under one of the station setting buttons 0-9 (17).

1. Set the desired station.
2. Press the button under which the station is to be stored and keep it held in. The sound will disappear for a few seconds and 'Station stored' will appear in the display.

Up to 10 stations can be stored in AM, FM1 and FM2, a total of 30 stations.

Automatic Storage of Stations

This function automatically searches and stores up to ten strong AM or FM stations in a separate memory. If more than ten stations are found, the ten strongest are stored. This function is especially beneficial in areas in which you are not acquainted with radio stations or their frequencies.

1. Select radio mode using the 

button.
2. Start the search by pressing 

for longer than 2 seconds.

   'Autostoring' appears in the display and a number of stations with strong signals (max. 10) from the set frequency band will be stored in the auto store memory. If there are no stations with sufficient signal strength, 'No Stn found' is shown.

The stored stations can be found using the buttons 0-9. When the radio is in Auto store mode, 'Auto' is shown in the display. The text disappears when you return to the ordinary radio mode.

Return to the standard radio mode by pressing the AM FM button, EXIT or by pressing AUTO for less than 0.7 seconds.

To access the latest saved stations, briefly press AUTO and then select the channel using the buttons 0-9.

Scanning for a Station

1. Select radio mode using the AM FM button.
2. Press SCAN #. Scan is shown in the display

   This function automatically searches for the next strong AM or FM station signals. When the radio finds a station, scanning is interrupted for approximately 8 seconds.
3. Press the SCAN # or EXIT button to select a station.

PI Searching (Automatic Search for a transmitter)

PI search is shown in the display when reception is poor. The radio automatically searches for the strongest transmitter for the set radio channel. 'PI-searching Exit to cancel' is displayed until a station is located or 'PI-searching is switched off'.

Radio Data System – RDS

RDS is a system which links specific network transmitters together. It is used, for example, to set the correct frequency irrespective of the transmitter to which the car occupants are listening or the active audio source (e.g. CD). The system can also be used for receiving traffic information and for finding broadcasts of a specific type. Radio text is also a component of RDS. A radio station can transmit information about the radio program broadcasting.

Certain radio stations do not use RDS or only use specific parts of RDS broadcast possibilities.

News Broadcasts

Program coded messages (such as news from RDS stations) will interrupt other audio sources using the volume setting for this specific purpose. As soon as the news broadcast is finished, the audio system returns to the previous audio source and resumes the previous volume setting.

Selecting News

1. Select radio mode using the AM FM button.
2. Press MENU.
3. Select the menu for the present sound source and press ENTER.
4. Select ‘News’ and press ENTER to active / deactivate.
5. Press EXIT.

News is displayed. If you do not wish to listen to a news item in progress, press the EXIT button. The News function remains active and the radio waits for the next news programme. To deactivate the function select News again and press ENTER.

Setting News

1. Select radio mode using the AM FM button.
2. Select the station from which news is to be received.
3. Press MENU.
4. Select the menu for the present sound source and press ENTER.
5. Select ‘Advanced Radio Settings....’ Press ENTER.
6. Select ‘News station...’. Press ENTER.
7. Select ‘News from current station’. Press ENTER.

Traffic Information

Traffic information (TP (Traffic Program)) from RDS stations interrupts other audio sources in order to broadcast. The message is heard at the volume set for this specific purpose. As soon as the message ends, the audio system returns to the previous audio source and resumes the previous volume setting.

Selecting TP

1. Press MENU.
2. Select the menu for the present sound source.
3. Select 'TP' and press ENTER to active / deactivate.
4. Press EXIT.

TP is shown in the display when this function is active. If the set station can transmit traffic information, TP is shown in the display.

If you do not wish to listen to a traffic item in progress, press the EXIT button.

The TP function, however, remains active and the radio waits for the next traffic bulletin.

Set TP from a Selected Channel

1. Select radio mode using the AM FM button.
2. Activate the station from which traffic information is to be received.
3. Press MENU. Select the menu for the present sound source and press ENTER.
4. Select Advanced radio settings in the menu and press ENTER.
5. Select 'TP...' and press ENTER.
6. Select 'TP Station...' and press ENTER.
7. Select 'TP and current station' and press ENTER.

Deactivate TP Station

1. Press MENU. Select the menu for the present sound source and press ENTER.
2. Select ‘Advanced radio settings...’ in the menu and press ENTER.
3. Select ‘TP...’ and press ENTER.
4. Select ‘TP Station...’ and press ENTER.
5. Select ‘TP from all stations’ and press ENTER.
6. Select EXIT.

TP Search

This function allows you to listen to traffic information when travelling between different areas and countries without needing to select a station.

1. Press MENU.
2. Select present source.
3. Select ‘Advanced radio settings...’ in the menu and press ENTER.
4. Select ‘TP...’ and press ENTER.
5. Select ‘TP search’ and press ENTER to active / deactivate.
6. Press EXIT.

Radio Text

Some RDS stations send information about programme content, artists, etc.

Display information with text in the display

1. Press MENU. Select the menu for the present sound source. Press ENTER.
2. Select ‘Radio text’ in the menu and press ENTER to active / deactivate.
3. Press EXIT.

Alarm

The alarm is transmitted automatically. The function cannot be deactivated. ‘ALARM!’ is shown in the radio display when an alarm message is sent. The function is used to warn motorists of serious accidents or disasters.

Programme Type (PTY)

When FM 1 or 2 is selected use the PTY function to select between the different programme types.

1. Press MENU. Select the menu for the present sound source and press ENTER.
2. Select 'PTY...' from the menu and press ENTER.
3. Select 'Show PTY' and press ENTER to active / deactivate.
4. Press EXIT.

When active the set station's PTY type will be shown in the display.

Not all radio stations have a PTY designation.

Search for a Specific Programme Type

Search through the entire wave band:

1. Select FM 1 or FM 2 and press the MENU button.
2. Select the menu for the present sound source and press ENTER.
3. Select 'PTY...' and press ENTER.
4. Scroll to 'Select PTY...' and press ENTER.
5. Press ENTER for one or more of the listed programme types. The PTY symbol in the display lights up when the first selection is made and the radio continues in stand-by for PTY.
6. Press EXIT to go back.
7. Select 'Search PTY' and press ENTER. If the radio finds a station with the selected programme type, it is played through the speakers.
8. If the radio finds a station that is unsuitable, continue the search with the buttons (forward or back).
9. If no stations with the selected programme type are found, 'No Stations Found' will be displayed and the radio will resume its previous frequency.

PTY mode is then in stand-by mode until the selected type of programme begins transmission. When this happens, the radio automatically switches to the station transmitting the selected programme type.

To Deactivate PTY Stand-by Mode

1. Select FM 1 or FM 2 and press the MENU button.
2. Select the **Menu** for the present sound source and press ENTER.
3. Select 'PTY...' and press ENTER.
4. Scroll to 'Select PTY...' and press ENTER.
5. Select 'Clear all PTY...' and press ENTER.
6. Press EXIT to cancel or ENTER to confirm.

Automatic Frequency (AF) Updating

The AF function is usually active and makes sure that the strongest available transmitter for a radio station is used.

1. Press MENU. Select the menu for the present sound source and press ENTER.
2. Select 'Advanced radio settings...' in the menu and press ENTER.
3. Select 'AF' and press ENTER to active / deactivate.
4. Press EXIT.

Regional Radio Program

The regional-function is normally deactivated. When the function is activated a regional transmission can be listened to despite a weak signal.

1. Press MENU. Select the menu for the present sound source and press ENTER.
2. Select 'Advanced radio settings...' in the menu and press ENTER.
3. Select 'Regional' and press ENTER to active / deactivate.
4. Press EXIT.
   When active 'REG' is shown in the display.

Enhanced Other Networks (EON)

With EON activated traffic information and news broadcasts interrupt radio programs. EON is normally in the distant position. The function has three levels:

Off - Not activated.

Local - Only interrupts if the signals are strong.

Distant - Interrupts even if the signals are weak.

Activate EON

1. Press MENU.
2. Select the menu for the present sound source and press ENTER.
3. Select ‘Advanced radio settings...’ in the menu and press ENTER.
4. Select ‘EON’ and press ENTER.
5. Select Off, Local or Distant and press ENTER.
6. Press EXIT.

Resetting Radio Functions

Restores all radio settings to the original factory settings.

1. Press MENU. Select the menu for the present sound source and press ENTER.
2. Select ‘Advanced radio settings...’ in the menu and press ENTER.
3. Select ‘Reset all’ in the menu and press ENTER.
4. Press EXIT to cancel or ENTER to confirm.

FM Menu

News
- On / Off*

TP
- On / Off*

PTY...
- Select PTY...
  - Search PTY
  - Clear all PTY...
- Show PTY
  - On / Off

Radio text
- On / Off*

Advanced Radio Settings...
- TP...
  - TP station...
  - TP search
    - On / Off*
- News station...
- AF
  - On* / Off
- Regional
  - On / Off*
- EON...
  - Off / Local / Distant*
- Reset all...

Audio Settings...
- Surround AM / FM... (option)
  - Dolby Pro-Logic II / 3 Channel / Off*
- Surround CD
  - Dolby Pro-Logic II / 3 Channel / Off*
- Subwoofer (option)
  - On* / Off
- Equalizer front (option)
- Equalizer rear (option)
- Auto. volume control
  - Low / Medium / High
- Reset all...

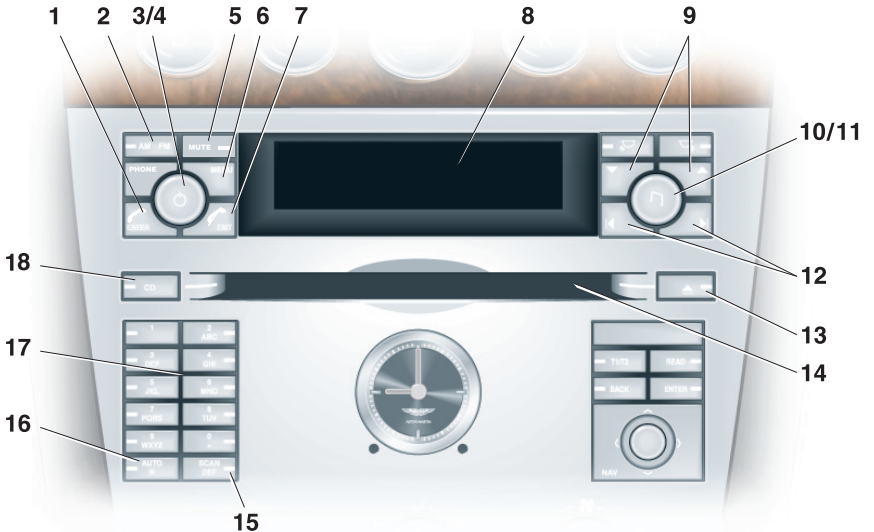
* Default / Factory Setting

AM Menu

Audio Settings...
- Surround AM / FM... (option)
  - Dolby Pro-Logic II / 3 Channel / Off*
- Surround CD...
  - Dolby Pro-Logic II / 3 Channel / Off
- Subwoofer (option)
  - On* / Off
- Equalizer front (option)
- Equalizer rear (option)
- Auto. volume control
  - Low / Medium / High
- Reset all...

* Default / Factory setting

CD Changer



(1) Enter - Select in the menu, activate a selection or activate the telephone from stand-by mode.

(2) AM** / **FM - Switch between FM1, FM2 and AM.

3) Power - Press for audio On / Off.

(4) Volume - Rotate for volume control.

(5) Mute - Press and release to mute the audio system / pause a CD at any time. Press and release again to unmute

Turning the dial left or right will also unmute the audio / CD.



(6) Menu - Opens the main menu.



(7) Exit - Scroll back in the menu, cancel a selection, put the telephone (option) in stand-by mode, or erase the previous character when entering text and numbers.

(8) Display - Presents options, menus and information.



(9) Navigation buttons - Scroll up / down in the menus or scroll forwards / back when entering text and digits or select preset stations.



(10) Sound - Press to select sound settings. Rotate to set.



(11) Tuning - Turn to manually search stations, change tracks (CD) or scroll up / down in the menu.



(12) Search - Press left or right once to auto search the next station. Press and hold (left or right) to manually select a station.



(13) Eject - CD.

(14) Opening for insert / eject - CD.



(15) Scan - Automatic station search.



(16) Auto - Find and store the strongest stations.



(17) Buttons 0 – 9 - Station presets, CD changer position, number / character buttons for the telephone (option) and menu short-cuts.



(18) CD mode - CD.

Use only 12 cm CDs.

Do not use CDs with adhesive disc labels. The heat from the CD player can cause the label to come loose from the disc. The CD player could be damaged.

Do not use CDs that are warped or appear warped (critical measurement for CD warp is 0.7 mm - anything more than this may cause problems).

The CD player will not be able hold the CD correctly (because of the warp), this may cause a jam in the CD player.

If the quality of the CD does not comply with the requirements of standard EN60908 or if it has been recorded using poor equipment, sound quality may be poor or playback interrupted.

Inserting a CD

The CD changer can hold up to six discs.

1. Press the CD button.
2. Select an empty position using the keypad (buttons 1 to 6) or use  . The display shows which positions are empty.
3. Insert a CD into the changer.

Ensure that 'Insert disc' is displayed before inserting a new disc.

Pause Mode

When the volume is at zero, the CD player switches to pause mode. Reactivate the player by turning up the volume.

Selecting Position

Select a CD to be played using the buttons 1-6 or by pressing  (up or down). The number of the disc and track are shown in the display.

Changing Tracks

Move **left** / **right** using the  buttons to skip to the previous or next track. The track number is shown in the display.

The tuning dial can also be used for this purpose.

Fast Forward / Rewind

Press and hold down the **left** or **right**  button to search within a track or the whole CD. The search continues as long as the buttons are held in.

Scan

Scan plays the first ten seconds of each track.

1. Press SCAN #.
2. Press EXIT to play the relevant track.

Random

Plays tracks from the CD in random order.

1. Press MENU. Select the menu for the present sound source and press ENTER.
2. Select Random in the menu and press ENTER.
3. Select 'Off', 'Single disc' or 'All discs' for the player to randomly choose from one or all CDs.
4. 'RND' or 'RND ALL' is shown in the display while the function is active.

Press the right search button to select the next random track.

Deactivate by pressing EXIT.

You can only select the next random track on the current disc.

Disc Text

Some CDs have title information.

Show CD title information

1. Press MENU. Select the menu for the present sound source and press ENTER.
2. Select Disc text in the menu and press ENTER.
3. If information is stored on the disc, it will now appear in the display.

To deactivate, select Disc text and press ENTER.

Eject 1 CD

Press the eject button to eject the CD.

For traffic safety reasons, the CD remains out for 12 seconds. The player will then draw back in the disc and switch to pause mode. Press CD to reactivate the player.

Eject all CDs

Press the eject button (for longer than 2 seconds) to initiate the eject function. The entire magazine is emptied, CD by CD. 'Eject all' is shown in the display.

This function can only be activated when the car is stationary and is interrupted if the car starts to move. For traffic safety reasons, the ejected CD remains out for 12 seconds. It must then be removed, or the function is cancelled.

Random...
- Off* / Single disc / All discs

News
- On / Off*

TP
- On / Off*

Disc text
- On* / Off

Audio Settings...
- Surround AM / FM (option)
  - Dolby Pro-Logic II / 3 Channel / Off*
- Surround CD
  - Dolby Pro-Logic II / 3 Channel / Off*
- Subwoofer (option)
  - On / Off*
- Equalizer front (option)
- Equalizer rear (option)
- Auto. volume control
  - Low / Medium / High
- Reset all

* Default / Factory Setting

ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

Car Phone (Option)

Contents

Introduction 9.2
Telephone Controls 9.2
Battery Protection Mode 9.4
Emergency Calls 9.4
Subscriber Identity Module Card 9.5
IMEI Number 9.5
Intelligent Driver Information System 9.6
Operation 9.6
Making and Receiving Calls 9.7
Last Dialled Number 9.8
One-Key Dialling 9.8
Calling from the Memory 9.9
Call Waiting 9.9
Functions During a Call 9.10
Phone Book 9.10
Text Entries 9.11
Telephone Menus 9.12

Introduction

The 'in-car' telephone is an integrated part of the Infotainment centre system along with the audio system and Satellite Navigation system functions. The infotainment system can be used easily and conveniently using the common control panel. The control panel display indicates the present function.

Always put traffic safety first.

- Switch off the telephone system when refuelling this vehicle
- Switch off the telephone system near blasting work

The 'in car' telephone installed to this vehicle does not support Unstructured Supplementary Services Data (USSD). Refer to your service provider for more information.

Volante Only: Driving with the roof lowered.

If making or receiving calls, microphone performance will be degraded.

Vehicles installed with the 'in-car' phone and the Bluetooth systems.

If both systems are active then the Bluetooth system will override the in-car' phone system. An active call on the 'in-car' phone will be ended if a call is received on the Bluetooth system or any of the Bluetooth menus are used.

PIN Code

The default PIN code for this 'in-car' phone system is 1234.

For increased security select your own PIN code (Refer to 'Edit codes', page 9.12).

Telephone Controls



(1) Enter - Accept a call, make a menu selection, activate the telephone from stand-by mode. A short press of the **Enter** button displays the last dialled number.



(2) Phone - On / off / stand-by.



(3) Volume - Controls the background noise from the radio etc. during a call.

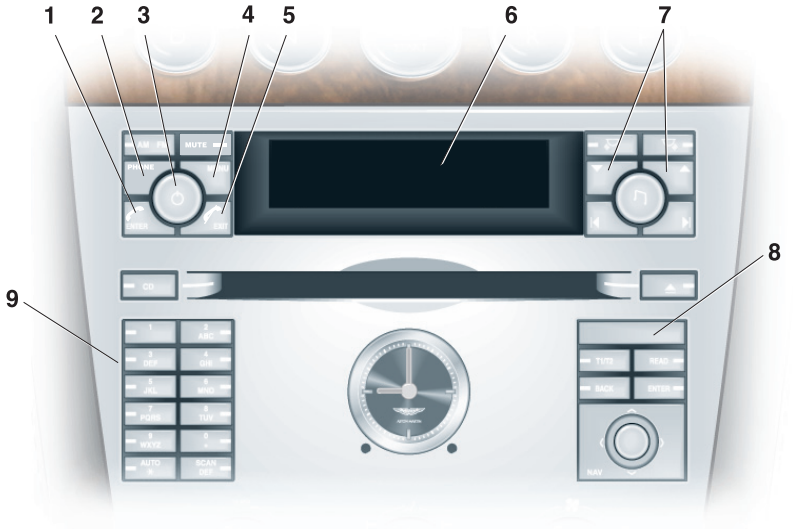


(4) Menu - Open the main menu.



(5) Exit - Terminate or reject a call, scroll back in the menu, cancel a selection, erase entered digits or characters.

(6) Display - Number and character buttons as well as menu short-cuts.





(7) Navigation buttons - Scroll up / down in the menus, scroll forward / back when entering text and digits.



(8) Sim Card - Remove the panel and insert / remove the sim card.



(9) Keypad - Use to dial number and enter characters.

Microphone

The hands free microphone is integrated in the roof console beside the rear-view mirror.

Speakers

The telephone uses the speakers mounted in the driver and passenger doors.

Battery Protection Mode

Using the vehicle electrical systems, i.e. the infotainment system, with the ignition key at position 'I' (engine off) will drain the battery charge. Eventually the battery will drain to such a low level that it will not start the engine.

Replace the battery as soon as possible, if the battery is not capable of starting the engine.

To avoid this happening, a series of safety mechanisms shut down nonessential electrical systems before excessive battery drain takes place.

Warning messages will appear indicating the state of the battery charge.

(Refer to 'Battery Protection Mode', page 12.28).

Emergency Calls

Emergency calls to alarm centres can be made without a SIM card as long as there is coverage by a GSM operator.

Making an Emergency Call

1. Activate the telephone.
2. Ring the emergency number that applies to your region.
3. Press 

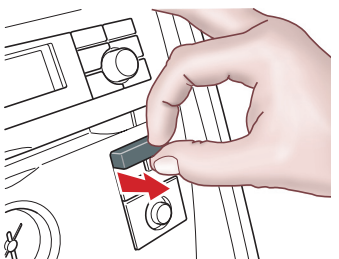
.

Subscriber Identity Module Card

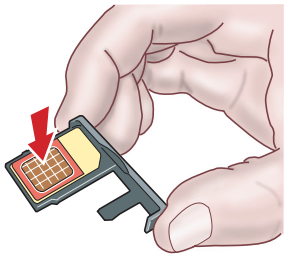
The telephone can only be used with a valid Subscriber Identity Module (SIM) card. The card is managed by different network operators. Contact your network operator if you experience difficulties with the SIM card.

Insert the SIM card to start using the telephone.

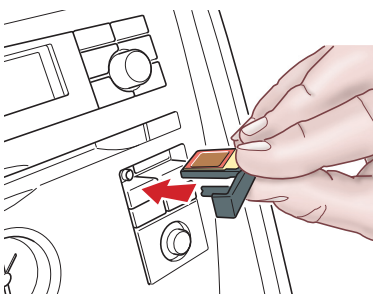
1. Switch the telephone off.
2. Remove the SIM card holder.



3. Insert the SIM card metal side up. Ensure that the bevelled corner of the SIM card matches the bevel of the holder.



4. Carefully press in the holder again.



IMEI Number

To restrict a telephone the network operator must be informed of the telephone's IMEI number. This is a 15 digit serial number programmed into the telephone.

To display this number, press '***#06#**'. Press EXIT to cancel.

Make a note of this number and keep it in a safe place.

Intelligent Driver Information System

The Intelligent Driver Information System (IDIS) system allows the priority of incoming telephone calls and SMS messages to be reduced so that the driver can concentrate on driving. Incoming calls and SMS messages can be delayed for 5 seconds before they are connected. **Missed calls are shown in the display**. IDIS can be deactivated using the menu functions (Refer to 'Traff. safety...', page 9.12).

Operation

When the telephone system is active or in stand-by mode, a handset is shown in the display.

If the ignition is switched off while the telephone system is on, the system will be on the next time the ignition is switched on. No calls can be received when the telephone system is switched off.

Activate

1. Press 

.
2. If asked enter the PIN code (Default 1234) and press 

.

For increased security select your own PIN code (Refer to 'Edit codes', page 9.12).

Deactivate

Hold 

in to switch off the telephone system.

Stand-by

Calls can be received while the audio system is active and information from the audio system sources is shown in the display. The telephone must be in active mode to use the other functions of the telephone system.

1. Press 

or 

to keep the telephone system in stand-by mode.
2. Press 

briefly to reactivate the system.

Volume Reduction During a Telephone Call

If the telephone rings when the radio is switched on, the volume is lowered when the call is answered. When the call is concluded, the volume returns to the previously set level.

The audio system can be muted automatically while a telephone conversation is in progress (Refer to 'Sounds...', page 9.12).

Satellite Navigation guidance messages will be muted if the telephone is in use. A 'Beep' will sound if a guidance message is transmitted.

Menu Short-cuts

In the menu system, numbers can be used instead of the arrows and 

to select the right menu on the main menu level. Each menu selection is numbered. The numbers are shown in the display together with the menu alternative.

Traffic Safety

For reasons of safety, the menu system cannot be accessed at speeds in excess of 8 km/h (5 m.p.h.). Only activities started in the menu system can be completed. The speed limiter can be disconnected using menu function (Refer to 'Traff. safety...', page 9.12).

Making and Receiving Calls

To Make a Call

Dial the number from the key pad and press 

.

Press 

and release to erase the last entered character.

Press for greater than two seconds, to erase the entire number.

To Receive a Call

Press 

.

Automatic Answer can also be used. (Refer to 'Auto answer', page 9.12).

The car audio system can be muted automatically while a telephone conversation is in progress (Refer to 'Sounds...', page 9.12).

To End a Call

Press 

on the control panel keypad. The audio system resumes its previous activity. Reject an incoming call by pressing 

.

Last Dialled Number

The telephone automatically stores the last telephone numbers / names dialled.

Calling the Last Dialled Number

1. Press 

on the keypad on the control panel (when in active mode).
2. Use the Navigation buttons to scroll up or down through the last numbers dialled. These are shown in the display.
3. Press 

.

One-Key Dialling

A number stored in the phone book can be linked to a one-key dial button (1-9).

Storing a Number

1. Select ‘Phone book...’ from the menu. Press 

.
2. Scroll to ‘One-key dial...’. Press 

.
3. Select ‘Select Number.’
4. Use the Navigation buttons to scroll up or down to select which number is to be the speed dial number. Press 

to confirm.
5. Use the key pad to enter the name or telephone number to search for in the phone book. Press 

to select.

Using One-Key Dialling

Hold in the desired speed dial button for approximately two seconds to make the call or press the number briefly followed by ENTER.

When the telephone is switched on, it takes a while before speed dialling is available. Menu (Refer to 'One-key dial...', page 9.12) must be activated to use a speed dial number.

Calling from the Memory

1. Press MENU.
2. Select 'Phone book...'.
3. Press ENTER. Scroll to the desired name using the navigation button or press the first letter of the name (or enter the entire name). Press ENTER.
4. Select 'Call'. Press ENTER.

Press ENTER to dial the selected number.

Call Waiting

If call waiting is active (Refer to 'Call waiting', page 9.12) a two-tone signal during a telephone call indicates that there is another incoming call.

The display shows 'Answer?'.

To Receive an Incoming Call

1. Press ENTER. Your current call will be put in hold mode.
2. Press EXIT to finish the call and return to a call on hold.

To Reject an Incoming Call

Press EXIT.

Functions During a Call

Several functions are available during a call.

During a call use the Navigation buttons to scroll up / down.

Press 

to make a selection.

Hold - Choose if the current call is to be held or resumed.

Phone book - Show phone book.

Additional functions are available during a call while another call is on hold.

Three-way calling - Conference call (provides further options).

Switch - Select between two calls.

Phone Book

Telephone numbers and names can be stored in either the telephone memory or the SIM card memory.

If the number of the person calling is stored in the phone book, the name of the caller will be shown in the display.

The telephone memory can store up to 255 names.

Storing Telephone Numbers with Names

1. Press 

.
2. Select ‘Phone book...’. Press 

.
3. Scroll to ‘New number’. Press 

.
4. Enter a name. Press 

.
5. Enter a number. Press 

.
6. Select ‘SIM’ or ‘Phone’ to save the number. Press 

.

Copy to...

Copy a phone book entry from the phone to the SIM card and SIM card to the phone.

1. Select 

.
2. Select Phone book.
3. Select Copy all.
4. Select ‘From SIM card to Phone book’ and press 

.

Erase Entries

1. Select MENU.
2. Select ‘Phone book...’.
3. Select ‘Search’.
4. Specify the first letter of the name (or the entire name) and press ENTER.
5. Scroll to the name to be erased and press ENTER.
6. Select ‘Erase’ to remove the name. Press ENTER to confirm.

Text Entries

Press the button with the relevant character. Press once for the first character, twice for the second character and so on. Press 1 for space.

1	space 1-? ! , . : " ' ( )	**6**	m n o 6 ñ ö ò Ø
2	a b c 2 ä å à æ ç	**7**	p q r s 7 ß
3	d e f 3 è é	**8**	t u v 8 ü ù
4	g h i 4 ì	**9**	w x y z 9
5	j k l 5	**0**	+ 0 @ * # & $ £ / %
*	if you enter two letters in a row from the same button, press * between them or wait a few seconds		
#	Switch between upper and lower case		
Exit	Erase the last entered character. If you press this for two seconds or more, the entire number or text is deleted.		

Cancelling Text Input

1. Erase all entered characters with a long press on the EXIT button.
2. Return to the menu with an additional long press on the EXIT button.

Telephone Menus

Phone book...
- New number
- Search
- Copy all...
  - SIM to phone
  - Phone to SIM
- One-key dial...
  - Active
  - Select number
- Erase SIM
- Erase phone
- Memory status

Call options...
- Send my number
- Call waiting
- Auto answer
- Auto redial
- Diversions...
  - All calls / When engaged / Not answered / Not reachable / Fax calls / Data calls / Cancel all

Phone sett...
- Network...
  - Automatic
  - Manual select...
- Language...
  - Select language
- SIM security...
  - On / Off / Auto
- Edit codes
  - PIN code
  - Phone code
- Sounds...
  - Ring volume
  - Ring signal
  - Mute radio
- Msg. beep
- Traff. safety...
  - Menu lock
  - IDIS
- Factory sett...

ASTON MARTIN

Bluetooth (Option)

Contents

Introduction 10.2
System Active / Inactive 10.2
Controls 10.3
Getting Help 10.5
Connecting a Phone 10.5
Making Calls 10.8
Receiving Calls 10.10
Ending Calls 10.11
Transfer a Call 10.11
Reject a Call 10.12
Mute and Un-mute a Call 10.12
Call Waiting 10.12
Sending DTMF Tones 10.13
Bluetooth Contact List 10.14
System Prompts 10.16
Selecting a Language 10.17
Troubleshooting 10.18
Definitions 10.18
LED Indicator Functions 10.19

Introduction

The Bluetooth system installed in this vehicle offers the following features:

- Seamless, wireless handsfree audio through a Bluetooth connection
- Digital audio interface with high quality, full-duplex, handsfree speech
- Speaker Independent Voice Recognition (VR)
- Voice-driven menu prompts
- Automatically mutes the radio
- Automatically pauses the CD player during calls
- Noise reduction and acoustic echo cancellation
- Compliance with Bluetooth Hands Free 0.96 and 1.0 profiles
- Audio through the door speakers

Volante Only: Driving with the roof lowered.

If making or receiving calls, microphone performance will be degraded.

Vehicles installed with the 'in-car' phone and the Bluetooth systems.

If both systems are active then the Bluetooth system will override the 'in-car' phone system. An active call on the 'in-car' phone will be ended if a call is received on the Bluetooth system or any of the Bluetooth menus are used.

The Bluetooth system uses the internal antenna of the mobile phone. Placing the mobile phone in the trinket tray may degrade the Bluetooth system performance.

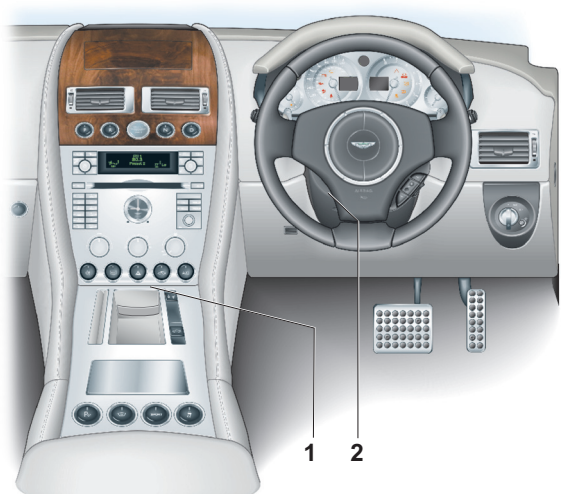
When in voice recognition (VR) mode:

- Always **speak normally**. The system reacts to a normal voice pattern. Do not shout or speak erratically
- When prompted to speak, speak after the 'beep'

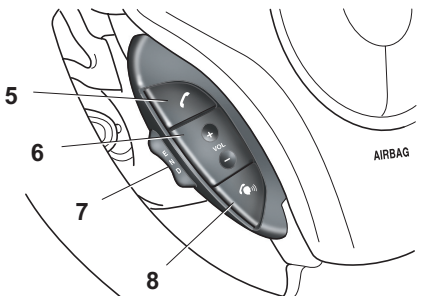
System Active / Inactive

The Bluetooth system is only active when the vehicle ignition is switched to **On**. If, during a call, the ignition is switched to **Off** the call will transfer to the mobile phone after approx. 6 seconds.

The Bluetooth system will not recognise a mobile phone, even if it is 'paired' (Refer to page 10-5), if the mobile phone does not have Bluetooth enabled. For more information refer to the user's guide for your mobile phone.



1. System LEDs (Refer to 'LED Indicator Functions', page 10.19).
2. Control pad.
3. Integrated microphone (behind the rear view mirror).
4. Integrated amplifier (not shown).
5. Answer.
6. Volume.
7. End.
8. Talk.



(5) Answer Button

If	'Press and Release'
when receiving a call	- to answer that call.
when the system is not on a call	- to make a call using the last number dialled.
while a call is in progress	- to toggle between hold and resume.
while on a call and after a call waiting notification is received	- to answer the waiting call.
with two active calls	- to toggle between calls.
If	**'Press and Hold'**
during an active call	- to switch audio between handsfree and privacy modes.

(6) Volume Button 

If	'Press and Release' (+ or -)
during a call	- to increase or decrease the Bluetooth speaker volume.
the microphone is muted	- to un-mute.
If	**'Press and Hold' (+ or -)**
during a call	- to mute the microphone

(7) End Button 

If	'Press and Release'
during an active call	- to end that call
when the system is in voice recognition (VR) mode	- to cancel VR mode.
when receiving an in coming call	- to reject that call.
when in a pairing session	- to cancel the pairing session.
If	**'Press and Hold'**
during an active call (including multi-party calls	- to end all calls.
when the system is not on a call	- to terminate the Bluetooth connection.

(8) Talk Button 

If	'Press and Release'
during normal operation	- **once** to initiate a voice recognition (VR) session. When a VR session starts, you will hear a prompt and then a short 'beep'. The 'beep' indicates that the system is waiting for a verbal command.
a prompt is being played	- to skip the prompt and go to the 'beep'.

'Press and Hold'
Initiates the paring process (Refer to 'Connecting a Phone', page 10.5).

Getting Help

If	Say
while learning to use the system, or whenever a reminder is required	- 'Help' into the microphone. The system includes help prompts in every menu.
whenever you are prompted for a yes or no	- 'Repeat'. The system will repeat the question.

Connecting a Phone

A connection between the vehicle Bluetooth system and a phone is called a 'Paired Link'.

When a paired link is set up the Bluetooth system remembers the phone's ID. Once the Bluetooth system and the phone are paired, the Bluetooth system automatically connects to your phone every time you start your vehicle or power up the vehicle's Bluetooth system.

This system supports paired links with up to four phones.

The process of initiating a Bluetooth connection with a phone varies per phone manufacturer. For more information refer to the user's guide for your mobile phone.

Initial Pairing

Use this procedure only if there are no handsets paired to the system.

Using Voice Recognition

1. Press the  button. When prompted say *'Pair phone'*. The system responds with *'Set your phone in scan mode and enter 1234 when prompted for the passcode'*.
2. When the phone displays 'Aston Martin' select the device. The phone displays the passcode entry screen.
3. Enter the passkey (1234). The phone displays 'PIN verified' and the system will say *'Pairing complete. Connection in progress'*.

*Some phones will ask you to accept the BT link. Enter **Yes**.*

Upon successful completion the system say's *'Connection is complete. Phone <n> ready for use'*.

Additional Pairing

To pair additional phones to the system:

Using Voice Recognition

1. Press the  button. When prompted say *'Set-up menu'*. The system responds with *'Set-up menu. Please say a command'*.
2. Say *'Pair phone'*. The system responds with *'Set your phone in scan mode and enter 1234 when prompted for the passcode'*.
3. When the phone displays 'Aston Martin', select the device. The phone will display the passcode entry screen.
4. Enter the passkey value provided by the system. The phone confirms that the PIN is verified and the system will say *'Pairing complete. Connection in progress'*.

Upon successful completion the system will say *'Connection is complete. Phone <n> ready for use'*.

Selecting a Phone

The phone to be selected must be in close proximity to the Bluetooth system.

Using Voice Recognition

1. Press the  button. When prompted say *'Set-up menu'*. The system responds with *'Set-up menu. Please say a command'*.
2. Say *'Connect phone <n>'*. The system responds with *'Connecting phone <n>'*. Upon successful completion the system says *'Connection complete'*.

List Paired Phones

Using Voice Recognition

1. Press the  button. When prompted say *'Set-up menu'*. The system responds with *'Set-up menu. Please say a command'*.
2. Say *'List phones'*. The system responds with *'The following phones have been paired: phone 1, etc.'*.

Removing a Paired Phone

Using Voice Recognition

1. Press the  button. When prompted say *'Set-up menu'*. The system responds with *'Set-up menu. Please say a command'*.
2. Say *'Remove phone <n>'*. The system responds with *'Removing phone <n>. Are you sure?'*.
3. Say *'Yes'*. The system responds with *'Phone <n> removed'*.

Removing All Phones

Using Voice Recognition

1. Press the  button. When prompted say *'Set-up menu'*. The system responds with *'Set-up menu. Please say a command'*.
2. Say *'Remove all phones'*. The system responds with *'Are you sure you want to remove all phones?'*.
3. Say *'Yes'*. The system responds with *'All phones have been removed'*.

ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN

Making Calls

When connected, all of these calls are handsfree. Terminate a VR session at any time by pressing the 

button.

Placing a Call with Voice Recognition (VR)

A phone number can be entered as a whole number or by two or more segments. A segment can include up to 15 digits. An entire number can include no more than 32 digits. If required a number can also begin by saying either 'Star' (*), 'Hash'(#) or 'Plus' (+).

Speak numbers as continuous digits. For example, dictate 555-2211 as ***'5-5-5-2-2-1-1'****, not* ***'5-5-5-twenty-two-eleven'****.*

Calling with a Whole Number

Using Voice Recognition

1. Press the  button. When prompted, say *'Dial Number'*. The system responds with *'Number please?'*.
2. Dictate the phone number as a single set of digits (without pauses between digits). The system recites the digits heard.
3. If the number recited by the system is correct, say *'Dial'*. The system responds with *'Dialling'*.

Calling with Number Segments

Using Voice Recognition

1. Press the  button. When prompted, say *'Dial Number'*. The system responds with *'Number please?'*.
2. Dictate the first segment of the whole number (For example, say the 1st three numbers.) The system recites the numbers heard.
3. Dictate the next segment of the whole number. The system recites the numbers heard. Repeat until you have entered the complete phone number.
4. When the complete number is recited by the system, say *'Dial'*. The system responds: *'Dialling'*.

*To delete a phone number segment, say **'Clear'** when prompted for the next segment. The system responds with **'Last String Entry Cleared'**, echoes any remaining segments, and waits for you to dictate a new segment.*

*To clear all phone number segments dictated so far, say **'Clear All'** when prompted for the next segment. The system clears all segments and returns to the 'Number please?' prompt.*

Calling a Number from the Bluetooth Contact List

Using Voice Recognition

1. Press the  button. When prompted, say *'Call <contact>'*. The system responds with *'Do you want to call < contact>?'*.
2. If the number recited by the system is correct, say *'Yes'*. The system responds with *'Calling'*.

The contact must be a valid contact stored in the Contact List (Refer to 'Bluetooth Contact List', page 10.14).

Calling a Number Using Phone Voice Name

The voice name must already be stored in the mobile phone.

Using Voice Recognition

1. Press the  button. When prompted, say *'Phone voice name'*. The system responds with *'Phone voice name, please'*.
2. Say *'<voice name>'*. The system calls the number associated with the phone voice name.

Calling a Number Using Speed Dial

Using Voice Recognition

1. Press the  button. When prompted, say *'Speed Dial'*. The system responds with *'Speed dial number, please'*.
2. Recite the speed dial number. The system repeats the number it heard and asks: *'Is this correct?'*.
3. If the number recited is correct, say *'Yes'*. The system responds with *'Dialling'*, and places the call.

Speak speed dial numbers as continuous digits. For example, dictate speed dial location 22 as ***'2-2'****, not* ***'twenty-two'****.*

Using Redial

Using Voice Recognition

Press the  button. When prompted, say *'Redial'*. The system responds with *'Redialling'*.

Using the Control Pad

Press the  button.

Receiving Calls

Using the Control Pad

Press the  button.

Using the Phone

Press the phone's 'answer call' key.

Caller ID

When receiving an incoming call, the system responds with *'Call from < Caller ID>'*, if available.

If Caller ID is not available:

- The system plays the 'in-band' ring tone, if the phone supports it
- If no 'in-band' ring tone is supported, the system generates a local ring tone

Ending Calls

Using Voice Recognition

Press the  button. When prompted say *'Hang Up'*. The system responds with *'Call ended'*.

Using the Control Pad

Press the 

button.

Using the Phone

Press the phone's 'end call' key.

Transfer a Call

From the Vehicle to Your Phone

Using Voice Recognition

Press the  button. When prompted, say *'Privacy Mode'*.

Using the Control Pad

- Press and hold the  button
- Turn the vehicle ignition to Off (If your phone asks to switch to handset mode, press **Yes**.)

From Your Phone to the Vehicle

Using Voice Recognition

Press the  button.

When prompted, say *'Handsfree Mode'*.

Using the Control Pad

- Press and hold the  button
- Turn the vehicle ignition to On

Some mobile phones will end the Bluetooth connection. If this happens the only way of transferring to the vehicle is by the mobile phone menu (if supported)

Reject a Call

Using the Control Pad

Press the  button.

The system responds with *'Call rejected'*.

Using the Phone

Press the phone's **ignore, End,** or **Hang up** key. The system responds with *'Call ended'*.

Mute and Un-mute a Call

Using the Control Pad

Mute - Press and hold either the **Up** / **Down** button.

Un-mute - Press and release either the  **Up** / **Down** button.

Using Voice Recognition

Mute - Press the  button. When prompted, say *'Mute'*.

Un-mute - Press the  button. When prompted, say *'Un-mute'*.

Call Waiting

If the mobile phone supports call waiting.

When you are on a call, an audible 'beep' signals a 2nd call.

Some mobile phone give two 'beeps'

Using the Control Pad

Press and release the  button to place the 1st call on hold and answer the incoming call.

Press and release the  button to toggle between active calls.

If the button is not pressed, the incoming call is automatically rejected and sent to voicemail (if set up on the phone).

The incoming call can also be rejected by pressing and releasing the END button.

Sending DTMF Tones

Using Voice Recognition

Press the button. When prompted, say *'Enter <digits>'* to send numbers as DTMF tones.

Using the Phone

Use the phone keypad.

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

Bluetooth Contact List

A list of names and phone numbers can be stored in the systems contact list. The list can include up to 20 entries.

A phone must be connected to the system before the contacts list can be accessed.

Adding an Entry

⚠ Warning ⚠

When adding, deleting or listing contacts ensure that the vehicle is stationary with the handbrake applied, and the gear selector in 'P' or 'N' (Automatic) or Neutral (Manual).

Using Voice Recognition

1. Press the  button. When prompted, say *'Contact List'*.

   If the system responds with *'Contact list is empty. Do you wish to add a contact?'*, say *'Yes'*.

   If the system responds with *'Contact list. Please say a command'*, say *'Add contact'*.

   If the name sounds like one that is already stored, or if an error is detected, the system asks you to try again.

2. The system responds with *'Please say the name'*, recite the contact to be stored.

   If the name is accepted, the system responds with *'Please say the number for <contact>'*.

3. Dictate the phone number either as:
   - An entire number (without pauses between digits)
   - A series of segments (for example, say the 1st 3 digits, then the next 3, etc.), until you have dictated the entire number

   The system repeats the number it heard.

4. When the entire number has been correctly entered say *'Store'*. The system responds with *'Contact added. Would you like to add another contact?'*.

   Say *'No'* to return to the system's ready state.

   Say *'Yes'* to add another entry.

Deleting an Entry

Using Voice Recognition

1. Press the  button. When prompted, say *'Contact List'*.

   If the system responds with *'Contact list. Please say a command'*, say *'Delete <contact>'*.

   If the system responds with *'Contact list is empty. Do you wish to add a contact?'*, say *'No'*. The system then exits to ready state.
2. When the system responds with *'Are you sure you want to delete the contact <contact>?'*, say *'Yes'*. The system responds with *'Contact deleted'*.

Listing Contacts

Using Voice Recognition

Press the  button. When prompted, say *'Contact List'*.

If the system responds with *'Contact list. Please say a command'*, say *'List contacts'*. The system begins to list the stored entries.

If the system responds with *'Contact list is empty. Do you wish to add a contact?'*, say *'No'*. The system exits to ready state.

*To move quickly through the list, say **'Previous contact'** or **'Next contact'**.*

System Prompts

Voice Prompts

To turn voice prompts On or Off:

Using Voice Recognition

1. Press the  button. When prompted, say *'Set-up menu'*.
2. Say *'Prompts On'* or *'Prompts Off'*. The system responds with *'Prompts On'* or *'Prompts Off'*.

Announcing a Caller

To turn the Caller Announce function On or Off:

Using Voice Recognition

1. Press the  button. When prompted, say *'Set-up menu'*.
2. Say *'Caller Announce On'* or *'Caller Announce Off'*. The system responds with *'Caller Announce On'* or *'Caller Announce Off'*.

Audio Indicators

When the system is not in a call or an active VR session, the following audio indicators may be heard:

If supported by the mobile phone.

Message	Meaning
You have a voicemail	- New voicemail message received.
You have a new message	- New SMS message received.
Phone battery low	- Low battery.

These messages are turned off when you turn off voice prompts.

Selecting a Language

When changing the system's language, all contacts in the Bluetooth contacts list are deleted.

Using Voice Recognition

1. Press and hold the END button while turning on the vehicle ignition. Continue holding the END button for at least 10 seconds.
   The system enters language selection mode and responds with *'Language Menu. Press volume up or down to change language'*.
2. Use the volume **Up** / **Down** button to scroll through the language choices. As a language appears, the system plays the prompt for that language (For example: *'English. To choose this language, restart the vehicle'*.).
   When the desired language has been selected, turn the vehicle ignition to Off. Wait for 6 seconds, then switch the ignition to On, the new language is then loaded.

ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN

Troubleshooting

Symptom	Action
New phones will not pair with the vehicle system	• The phone must support Bluetooth Handsfree Profile 0.96 or 1.0 • The system supports a maximum of 4 phones at once. Make sure this limit is not exceeded • Remove all previous pairings using the 'Remove All' command. The system should then be restarted • Delete the pairing information on the phone and ensure that the phone is removed from any other systems with which it is paired

Symptom	Action
Poor VR Performance	• Enter the digits in segments • Speak with no pauses • Talk louder • Speak towards the direction of the microphone • Check that the centre air vents are not facing directly up to the microphone

Volante Only: Driving with the roof lowered.

If making or receiving calls, microphone performance will be degraded.

Definitions

Continuous Voice Recognition - The ability to find word boundaries without requiring pauses between words.

Pair - The process used by two wireless devices, with pass codes as an input, to create the link of the Bluetooth authentication process.

Passcode - A term that is generally synonymous with PIN or passkey, used in the Bluetooth specifications. The passcode is entered into the devices involved in pairing, enabling them to verify the operation.

In this application, to avoid confusion, passkey is used as distinct from PIN, which is used to unlock a handset's SIM card.

Press and Hold - A button press of at least 1 second.

Press and Release - Pressing a button for 100 milliseconds.

Ready State - The system is paired to a phone but is not in an active call.

Speaker Dependence - The degree to which a speech recognition system requires knowledge of a speaker's individual voice characteristics in order to successfully process speech.

Speaker Independence - Describes speech recognition systems that do not need to be trained by a user.

Voice Recognition (VR) - The method of verbal input into the speech interface.

LED Indicator Functions

		LED State				
LED	**Phone Status**	**Power Off**	**Power On**	**Pairing in Progress**	**Mute Mode**	**Call Waiting**
Blue	Not connected	Off	Off	Flashing	N/A	N/A
	Connected (in a call)	Off	On	N/A	Flashing	N/A
	Connected (no active call)	Off	On	N/A	N/A	N/A
Amber	Not connected	Off	Off	Off	N/A	N/A
	Connected (in a call)	Off	On	Off	N/A	Flashing
	Connected (no active call)	Off	Off	Off	N/A	N/A

When the Bluetooth system has been powered down the Bluetooth system LEDs will flash three times, indicating that the power has been removed.

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

Satellite Navigation

Introduction 11.2
Disc Player Location 11.2
Map Disc 11.2
System Controls 11.4
Getting Starting 11.5
Menu Structure 11.5
Map Image 11.8
System Settings 11.9
Demo (Simulation) 11.13
Set a Destination 11.13
Free Search 11.21
Next Destination 11.22
Current Position 11.23
Last Ten Destinations 11.23
Return Trip 11.24
Store a Destination 11.24
Start Guidance 11.26
Itinerary 11.27
Guidance 11.28
Avoid Areas 11.29
Detour – Alternate Route 11.32
Map View 11.33
Map Icons 11.36
Traffic Information 11.37
Avoid Traffic Problems 11.39
Traffic Surveillance 11.40
Frequently Asked Questions 11.42

Introduction

The Satellite Navigation system is an integrated part of the Infotainment centre system along with the audio system and telephone (option) functions.

This satellite navigation system has been developed to help guide you to the destination of your choice.

The system includes features that enable you to set itineraries, search for certain types of points of interest along your route, store special destinations, etc.

GPS (Global Positioning System)

The vehicle's speed sensor and a gyro calculate the current position and the direction of travel of the car using signals from the GPS satellite system.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel) receiver

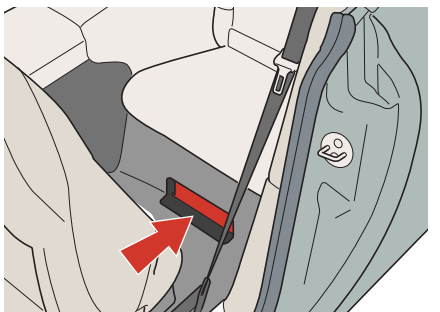
Standardised code system for traffic information. The TMC receiver seeks the relevant frequency. Transmission occurs via FM frequencies. Transmission is not available everywhere. The system is currently being expanded.

Screen Care

The screen must only be cleaned with a soft, lint less, lightly dampened cloth, or a cloth with a mild window cleaning agent.

Disc Player Location

Remove a protection panel (screws x4) in the rear passenger seat 'kick board' (right hand side) to access the disc player. Always reinstall the protection panel after loading a disc.



Map Disc

Be careful when handling Map discs. Make sure they do not become dirty and are not exposed to moisture.

When not in use, the Map disc's should be stored in their cases. Avoid storing them in high temperatures, direct sunlight or dusty environments.

To Load / Change a Map Disc

⚠ Warning ⚠
Always comply with relevant traffic regulations.

Change the discs as follows:

1. Shut down the Satellite Navigation system.
2. Open the hatch on the player. The disc will eject (the ignition must be On).
3. Insert the new disc and close the hatch.

The screen goes black and 'Loading new program – please wait' is displayed at the bottom.

The entire procedure can take up to five minutes. Once programming is complete, the start screen is displayed.

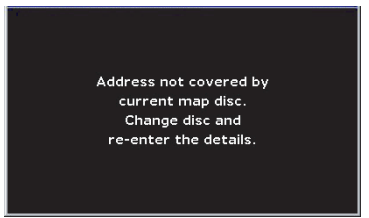
Changing to an updated map disc may in some cases also add new software, images, menus and new functions to the system.

One or more Map disc(s) may be supplied with the Satellite Navigation system. Each disc covers the same area.

If more than one disc is supplied each disc will contain area specific information.

Each disc has it's specific areas printed on it.

If an entered address, facility etc. is not available on the disc in use then the following message will show.



Eject the current disc and insert the disc for the area. Re-enter the address, facility etc. details.

Factors such as the constant expansion and rebuilding of the road network, new traffic regulations constantly being introduced etc. means that the digital map database is not always up-to-date. The contents of the Map disc determine the scope of destinations, points of interest, roads, etc.

The digital maps are continuously updated and the coverage is increased gradually.

For information on the latest versions of Map discs, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

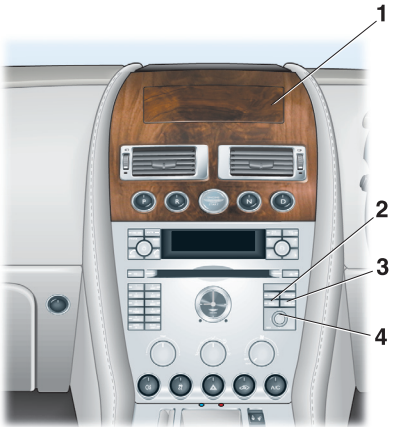
⚠ *Warning* ⚠
Never use the navigation system or any other feature in the vehicle in a way that distracts you from the task of driving safely.

⚠ *Warning* ⚠
Distraction can lead to a serious accident.

⚠ *Warning* ⚠
Set and make changes in the navigation system only with the vehicle parked.

⚠ *Warning* ⚠
Be aware of the current traffic situation.

System Controls



(1) Screen - Displays maps and provides detailed information on route type, distance, etc.

BACK ***(2) Back -*** Press to return to the previous menu or to undo a choice.

ENTER ***(3) Enter -*** Press to confirm options or to activate different menus.

Enter can also be selected by pressing the Navigator.



(4) Navigator - Move **'Up'**, **'Down'**, **'Right'** or **'Left'** to navigate through different menu options, traffic messages, etc.

Getting Starting

Using this Guide

Search path

Menu paths are indicated for each operation in the following format:

(***Set destination*** > *Address* > *City)*

Menu selections in the text are indicated by *<address>*.

Navigate through the menus by using the Control pad.

Turning the Navigation System 'On'

The ignition key must be in position 'I' or 'II'. Press any button on the user control pad. The system may need a few seconds to detect your position and movement.

Turning the Navigation System 'Off'

Move to <*Shutdown*> using **Navigator** and press ENTER.

The Navigation system can be accessed even if the engine is switched off. Always switch the ignition key to position '0' or remove it when the system is not in use so the battery does not become discharged.

The locations used in this chapter do not necessarily reflect known places and are for the purpose of describing operating procedures only.

Guidance Voice

(Refer to 'System Settings', page 11.9)

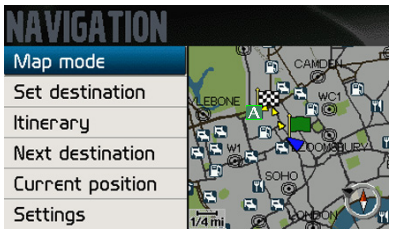
With Audio On - If guidance is active, when guidance is provided the audio system will mute until the guidance message has finished.

Phone in Use - If guidance is active, guidance messages will be muted if the in-car phone is in use.

If a guidance message is broadcast during a phone call an audible 'Beep' will sound.

Menu Structure

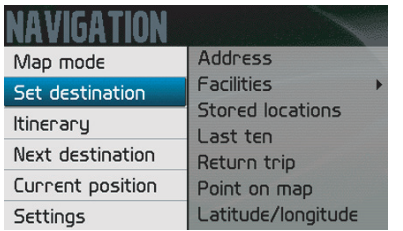
Left Hand Menu



Provides access to system functions (main menu).

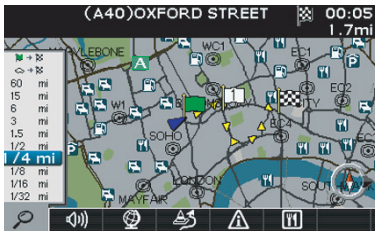
While in the default screen (map view) press BACK. Move **Up** / **Down** to select a menu option and then move **Right** or press ENTER to access the functions.

Right Hand Menu



Each menu heading in the left-hand section has a sub menu containing further options. Select an option using **Up** or **Down** and press ENTER. Press BACK to return to the main menu.

Quick Menu

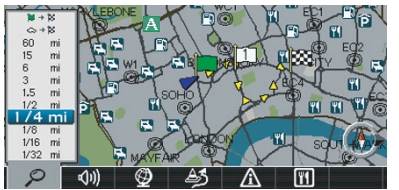


Press ENTER while in map view to access Quick menus. Select a Quick menu using **Right** / **Left**. Select an option using **Up** / **Down** and press ENTER.

Quick menus make it easier to access certain system options.

Some options are only accessible through the Quick menus.

Map Scale



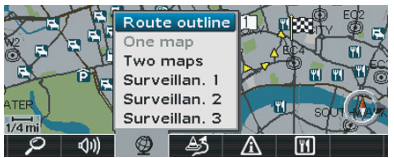
Used to zoom in or out. The entire route from start to finish or the remaining route from the current position to the destination can be displayed (Refer to 'Map Scale', page 11.35).

Guidance



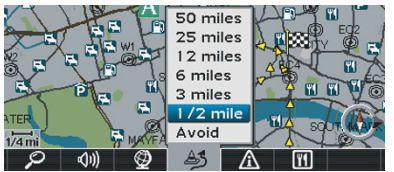
Press ENTER to repeat a voice guidance.

Map



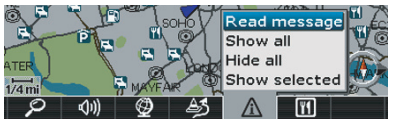
Used, for example, to choose between displaying one or two maps (Refer to 'Map View', page 11.33). One or more areas can be monitored (Refer to 'Traffic Surveillance', page 11.40). Select <*Route outline*> to view a list of approaching guidance points (Refer to 'Guidance', page 11.28).

Detour



Avoid parts of the calculated route, e.g., to avoid construction. It also possible to avoid specified streets along the route (Refer to 'Avoid Areas', page 11.29).

Traffic Information



Select which traffic information symbols are to be displayed on the map image. It is also possible to read the traffic messages indicated on the map image. (Refer to 'Traffic Information', page 11.37).

Traffic information is not available in all areas.

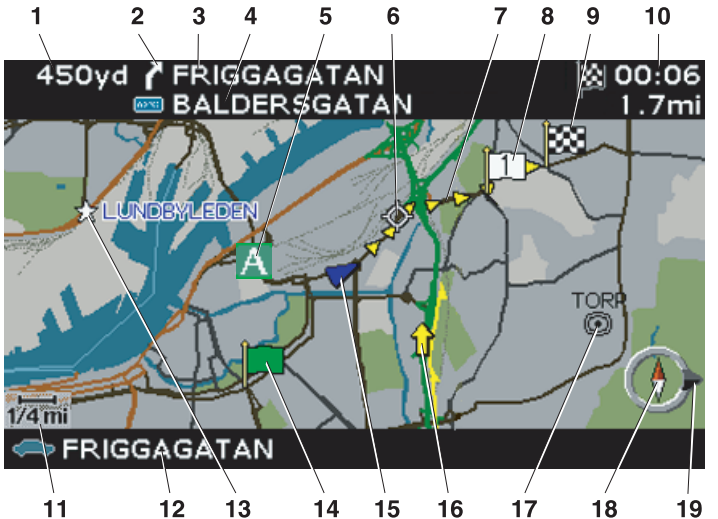
Facilities



Search for facilities around your vehicle and along the itinerary, e.g. select <*Along m. way*> to search for facilities which are easily accessible from the motorway (Refer to 'Specify a Facility', page 11.17).

Map Image

1. Distance to the next guidance point.
2. Next guidance.
3. Name of next road.
4. Road sign information.
5. Facility symbol for Aston Martin Dealer.
6. Next guidance point.
7. Route.
8. Intermediate destination.
9. Destination.
10. Remaining travel time and distance to destination.
11. Map scale.
12. Road currently travelling.
13. Stored Destination.
14. Starting point.
15. Position of vehicle.



16. Symbol for traffic information.
17. Facility symbol for centre.
18. Compass.
19. Direction of destination

Road types

Motorway – green

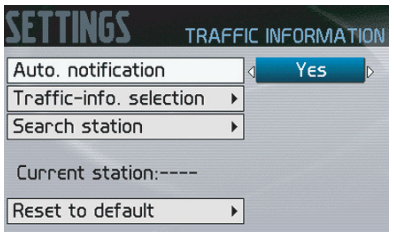
Main road – red

Smaller main road – brown

Normal road – dark grey

Local road – dark green

Traffic Information



(***Settings*** > *Traffic Information)*

Move among the functions using **Up** or **Down**.

Auto notification - Select <*Yes*> using **Right** / **Left** and press ENTER to obtain the option to choose an alternative route bypassing any traffic problems.

Select *No* to switch off Auto notification.

Traffic-info. selection - Press **Right** to obtain the submenu. Select which traffic information symbols (traffic messages) the system should show on the map and take into account when calculating the route.

Show all - Press ENTER to obtain all available traffic information.

Hide all - Press ENTER to receive no traffic information.

Show Selected - Press **Right** to be able to choose among the symbols.

Search station - Search for and select transmitting stations for traffic information. Select <*Search / select station*> using **Up** / **Down** and press **Right**.

Select <*Search station*> and press ENTER to search for existing stations.

Choose <*Select station*> and press ENTER to select from among existing stations. Use **Up** / **Down** to select a station and press ENTER.

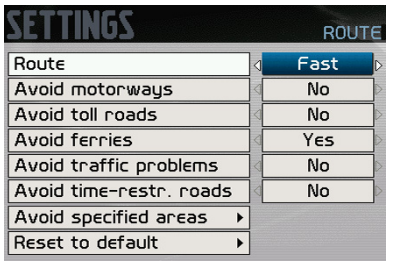
Press BACK to return to the previous screen.

Current station - Shows the current station for traffic information.

Reset to default - Restore factory settings. Press **Right**. Select <*OK*> or <*Cancel*> using **Up** / **Down** and press ENTER.

Traffic information is not available in all areas.

Route Options



(***Settings*** > *Route options*)

Use **Up** / **Down** to move between the functions and select the desired setting using **Right** / **Left**. Confirm settings by pressing ENTER.

Route - Selects the fastest or shortest route when calculating.

Avoid motorways - Indicate if motorways are to be avoided when calculating the route.

Avoid toll roads - Indicate if toll roads are to be avoided when calculating the route.

Avoid ferries - Indicate if ferries are to be avoided when calculating the route.

Avoid traffic problems - Indicate if the system should give consideration to traffic problems when calculating the route.

Avoid time-restr. roads - Indicate if the system should pay consideration to time-restricted roads when calculating the route.

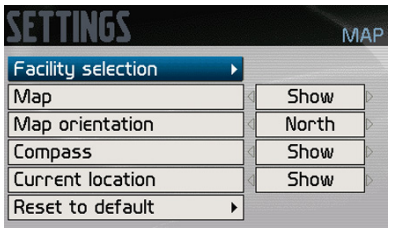
The correct time zone must be set for the function to work (Refer to 'System Settings', page 11.9).

Avoid specified areas - Select the areas the system is to avoid when calculating the route. Press **Right**. Select <*Selected*> using **Up** / **Down** and press **Right** again to specify areas.

Reset to default - Restore factory settings. Press **Right**. Select <*OK*> using **Up** / **Down** and press ENTER.

The system can only use larger roads when calculating a route extending over a long distance. If NO is selected for toll roads and motorways, they are avoided to the greatest possible extent and are only used if there is no other reasonable alternative.

Map Options



(***Settings*** > *Map options)*

Use **Up** / **Down** to move between the functions and select the desired setting using **Right** / **Left**. Confirm settings by pressing ENTER.

Facility selection - Press **Right** to obtain the submenu.
Select <*Show all*> to see all facility symbols on the map image.
Select <*Hide all*> if no symbols are to be displayed.
Select <*Show selected*> and press **Right** to specify which symbols are to be shown on the map image. These are activated with a cross.
Step using **Up** / **Down** to choose among the symbols. Activate or deactivate using **Right** / **Left**. Confirm settings by pressing ENTER.

Map - If the map is hidden, the system guides with an arrow.

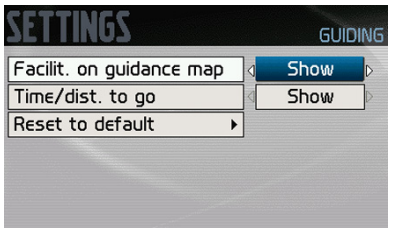
Map orientation - Indicate whether north or the heading (direction of travel) should be up when looking at the map.

Compass - Indicate if the compass is to be shown on the screen.

Current Location - Indicate if the name of the street on which the car is currently driving should be shown at the bottom of the screen.

Reset to default - Restore factory settings. Press **Right**. Select *OK* using **Up** or **Down** and press ENTER.

Guiding Options



(***Settings*** > *Guiding options)*

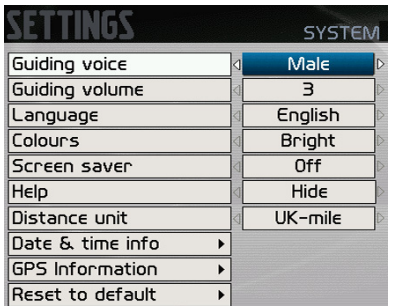
Use **Up** or **Down** to move between the functions and select the desired setting using **Right** or **Left**. Confirm settings by pressing ENTER.

Facilit. on guidance map - Select *Show* if facilities are to be displayed on the junction map.
Select *Hide* if no facilities are to be displayed on the junction map.

Time/dist. to go - Select *Show* to see the remaining travel time and distance from the current position to the destination during guidance.
Select *Hide* if the remaining time and distance is not to be displayed.

Reset to default - Restore factory settings. Press **Right**. Select *OK* using **Up** or **Down** and press ENTER.

System Options



(***Settings*** > *System options)*

Use **Up** / **Down** to move between the functions and select the desired setting using **Right** / **Left**. Confirm settings made using ENTER.

Guiding voice - A male or a female guiding voice can be selected.

Guiding volume - Guiding voice volume.

Language - Indicate the language to be used in the system.

Colours - Choose between Light, Dark or Contrast.

Screen saver - Indicate whether the screen saver is to be used (comes on after 30 seconds).

Help - Indicate if help texts are to be displayed at the bottom of the screen.

Distance unit - Indicate which unit of distance is to be used for navigation.

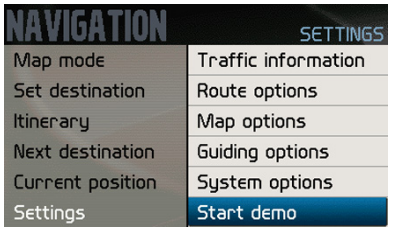
Date & time info - Press **Right** to set date and time format.

GPS Information - Press **Right** to view coordinates and address of the car's position, as well as the number of satellites the system is in contact with.

Reset to default - Restore factory settings. Press **Right**. Select <*OK*> using **Up** / **Down** and press ENTER.

About - System information.

Demo (Simulation)



(***Settings*** > *Start demo)*

The demo illustrates how the system works when the car is stationary by simulating a trip to a specified destination. All settings can be made during the demonstration. <*Stop demo*> interrupts the simulation.

A destination must be entered for the demo to work.

Set a Destination

The Navigation system requires a destination to be entered so that a route to the destination can then be calculated. Various destination options are available.

If the screen is in map view press BACK *to access the main menu.*

Once a valid destination has been entered <*Start Guide*> will be available (Refer to 'Guidance', page 11.28).

Various destinations can be entered and saved as an itinerary (Refer to 'Itinerary', page 11.27).

Specify an Address

Select Country



(***Set Destination*** > *Address)*

Move **Up** / **Down** to select <*Country*> and press ENTER.

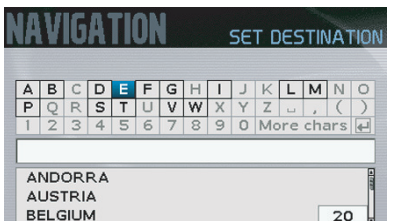
*Press **Right** when an arrow is displayed on the right of the line. A list of the five last entered countries will be displayed. Select the required Country, if available, from the list and press* ENTER.

Use the **Navigator** to spell out the desired country from the Character table. Press ENTER for each letter.

When there are no more alternatives, the system fills in the remaining letters itself).

A list of the first three countries matching that letter combination is shown at the bottom of the screen. A scroll bar on the right-hand side indicates that there are several alternatives in the list.

The number indicates how many.
Move **Down** and select directly from the list in the menu. Select using **Up** / **Down** and press ENTER.



Return to the Character table by pressing BACK. Press BACK to delete the entered letters one at a time.

The definition of city or area may vary from country to country or even within a country. Sometimes it refers to a municipality, while other times it refers to an individual section of a city.

Countries, Cities and Street names are deleted when the destinations in 'Last ten' are deleted.

<*Country*> and <*City*> can be pre-selected and then correspond to the position of the most recently entered destination.

Select City

Select <*City*> and press ENTER.

Press **Right** when an arrow is displayed on the right of the line. A list of the five last entered countries will be displayed.

Follow selection methods described for Country.

Select Street



Move to <*Street*> and press ENTER.

It is also possible to search for street addresses throughout the country without specifying a particular city.

*Move **Up** to <City> and press ENTER then BACK. Then move **Down** to <Street> and press ENTER.*

No street addresses are stored in the system for some small towns. The town centre, however, can always be specified as the destination.

Use the **Navigator** to select the desired letters from character table and press ENTER or move **Down** and select directly from the list in the menu.



Select a street and press ENTER. A scroll bar on the right-hand side indicates that there are several alternatives in the list. The number indicates how many.

Return to the character table with BACK.

Press BACK to delete the entered letters one at a time.

<*Free search*> (Refer to 'Free Search', page 11.21).

Select Street Number / Junction



If the street number of the selected address is known, it can also be entered to make guidance more exact. An intersecting street can also be entered instead of the street number.

It is possible to move directly **Down** to <*Start guide*> and press ENTER.



Move to <*Number*> and press ENTER. Existing street numbers are then displayed. Select a number using **Right** / **Left** and press ENTER.

Set

Confirm entered number.

Cancel - Go back to the previous screen.



Move **Down** to <*Junction*> and press ENTER. The roads that intersect the selected street are shown in a list. Select from among the streets using **Up** / **Down** and press ENTER.

A scroll bar on the right-hand side indicates that there are several alternatives in the list.

Specify a Post Code

Use **Up** / **Down** to move to <*City*> and press ENTER.



Move **Up** and then **Right** to <*Post code*> and press ENTER.

Use **Navigator** to select the desired letters and numbers from the character table and press ENTER or move **Down** and choose a Post Code directly from the list if options are available.



The scrolling list on the right-hand side indicates that there are more options in the list.

Press BACK to return to the table of characters to delete entered characters. Delete entered characters, then move **Up** to <*City*> and press ENTER to return to the previous screen.

In some countries the entire Post Code cannot be specified.

Select Street Address

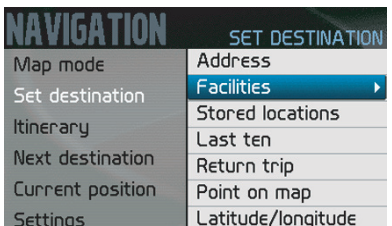


Move to <*Street*> and press ENTER. Choose letters using **Navigator** and press ENTER or move **Down** and choose a street name directly from the list if options are available.

Then move to <*Number*> or to <*Junction*> to specify a street number or a crossroads. Select <*Start Guide*> to obtain guidance to the destination.

Specify a Facility

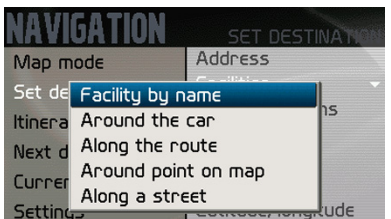
Facilities is a collective name for places such as Petrol Stations, Hotels, Restaurants, Aston Martin dealers, Hospitals, Car Parking, etc.



(***Set destination*** > *Facilities)*

Press ENTER to access a submenu with search options.

It is also possible to search for facilities around the car, along the itinerary and along the motorway using the Quick menu (Refer to 'Facilities - Quick Menu', page 11.19).



Facility by name - Enter the name of a facility or select a facility type from the list in the menu. The list can vary and only shows the facilities of the selected City or area.

Around the car - The system searches in a circle with a radius of at least 2 km (1.5 mile). If less than 40 facilities are found, the search is extended to a radius of max. 100 km (62 mile).

Along the route - If a destination has been specified, the system can search for facilities within an area max. 1 km (0.5 mile) from the route and max. 100 km (62 mile) ahead.

Around point on map - The system searches the same way as *<Around the car>*, but around a specified point on the map.

Along a street - The system searches along a specified street.

Select an option using **Up** / **Down** and press ENTER.

Search Facility by Name / Type



(***Set destination*** *> Facilities > Facility by name)*

Move to *<Type> or <Name>* and press ENTER.

Use **Navigator** to select the desired letters and press ENTER or move **Down** and select directly from the list in the menu.

A scroll bar on the right-hand side indicates that there are several alternatives in the list.

The number indicates how many. Select using **Up** / **Down** and press ENTER.

Some facilities (when selecting by *<Type>*) have further options. For example, select petrol station and press ENTER. The names of different petrol chains found in that area are then displayed. Select from among the alternatives and press ENTER.

Return to the character table with BACK.

Press BACK to delete the entered letters one at a time.

It is possible to search for facilities throughout a country without specifying a particular city.

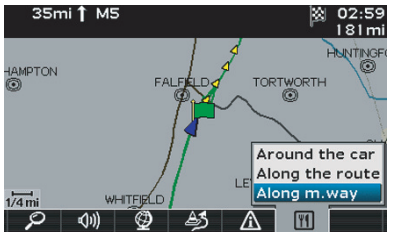
Move Up to <City> and press ENTER *then* BACK*. Then move Down to <Type> or <Name> and press* ENTER.

A scroll bar on the right-hand side indicates that there are several alternatives in the list.

The number indicates how many. Return to the character table with BACK. Press BACK to delete the entered letters one at a time.

<Free search> (Refer to 'Free Search', page 11.21).

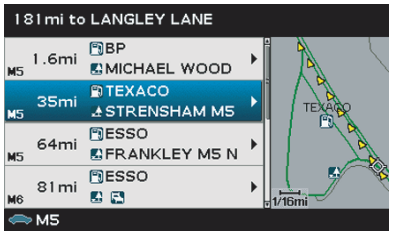
Facilities - Quick Menu



In map view press ENTER to access the Quick menu. Select the Facilities menu using **Right** / **Left**. Select from the menu using **Up** / **Down** and press ENTER.

From the Facilities Quick menu it is possible to search for facilities which are easily accessible from the Motorway.

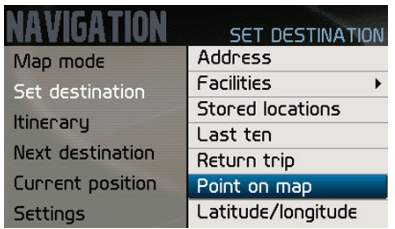
When a calculated route extends over more than one Motorway, the system also searches adjoining Motorways. If no route is calculated, the system searches along the Motorway the car is travelling on.



The list shows rest areas, petrol stations and restaurants along the Motorway along with the distance. Select a facility using **Up** / **Down**.

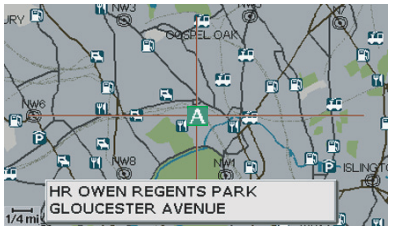
The facility is displayed on the map image. Press ENTER to view the whole map and to obtain map scroll mode. Press ENTER again to obtain the map scroll menu. Select <*Set as destination*> and press ENTER to select the facility as destination (Refer to 'Map Scroll', page 11.34).
In cases where there is more than one facility at the destination, an arrow is displayed to the right of the list. Press **Right** to view a submenu of facilities. Select facility and press ENTER to view it on the map.

Specify Point on the Map

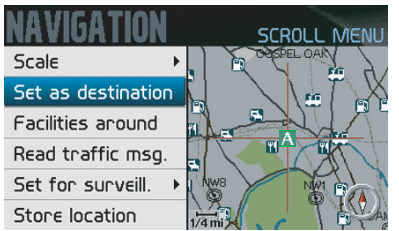


(***Set Destination*** > *Point on map)*

Press ENTER. Use **Navigator** to move the cross on the map and specify a destination directly on the map, for example.



The centre of the cross indicates the current destination on the map. The name and destination that correspond to the cross position are shown at the bottom of the map.



Use **Navigator** to move the cross to the desired destination and press ENTER to access the scroll menu. Move to <*Set as destination*> using **Up** / **Down** and press ENTER.



The destination is registered and added to the itinerary.

Start guidance **-** Starts guidance to the destination.

Add to itinerary **-** Add another destination.

Route options **-** Settings for route priorities.

Clear itinerary **-** Erases the itinerary.

Specify Coordinates



(***Set Destination*** > *Latitude / longitude)*

Move **Left** / **Right** to move from row to row and **Up** / **Down** to set coordinates**.**

OK - Shows the Destination of the specified coordinates on the map. Press ENTER to access the scroll menu. Move to *Set as destination* using **Up** or **Down** and press ENTER to select the Destination as a destination.

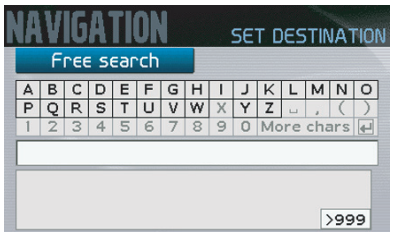
Press BACK to return to coordinate input.

Cancel - Return to the previous screen.

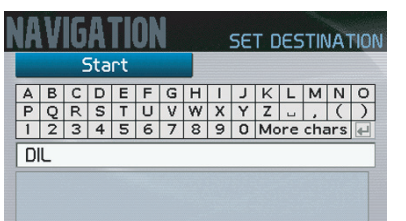
Free Search



Searches can be done using part of a City or Street name. Move to <*City*> or <*Street*> using **Up** / **Down** and press ENTER.



Move **Up** to <*Free search*> and press ENTER.



Use the **Navigator** to enter part of the name and press ENTER. Move **Up** to <*Start*> and press ENTER.

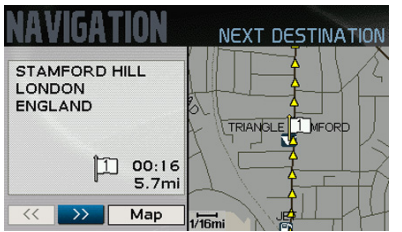


Use **Up** / **Down** to move to the desired option and press ENTER.

A scroll bar on the right-hand side indicates that there are several alternatives in the list. The number indicates how many.

Press BACK to return to the previous screen.

Next Destination



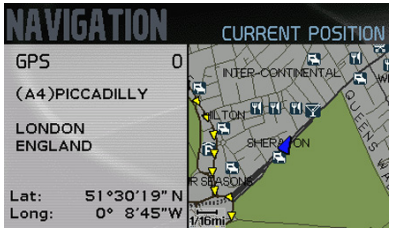
(***Next destination***)

Press ENTER or **Right** to obtain information on the destination, such as name, remaining journey time and distance from present position to the destination.

Press ENTER again if more destinations are specified to obtain information and to view them on the map image.

Move to <*Map*> and press ENTER to view the whole map image and obtain scroll mode. Press ENTER again to obtain the map scroll menu (Refer to 'Map Scroll', page 11.34).

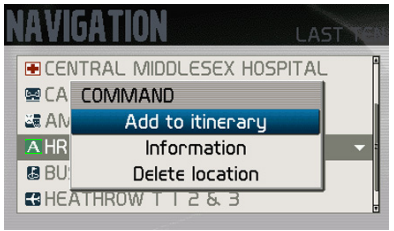
Current Position



(***Current position***)

Press ENTER. The map image shows the car's position. Press ENTER or **Right** to obtain information on the destination, for example name and coordinates.
GPS indicates the number of satellites the system is in contact with.

Last Ten Destinations



(***Set destination*** > *Last ten)*

Press ENTER to see the ten most recently entered destinations.

The scroll bar on the right-hand side indicates that there are several alternatives in the list. Move to the desired destination using **Up** / **Down** and press **Right** or ENTER to access the submenu.

Add to itinerary - Adds the destination to the itinerary.

Information - Provides information on the destination.

Delete Location - Deletes the entered destination.

Return Trip

(***Set destination*** > *Return trip)*

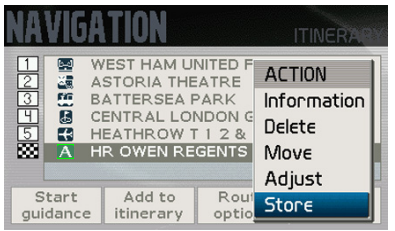
Press ENTER to obtain guidance back to the starting point.



Select <*Start guidance*> and press ENTER. The system then starts guiding back to the destination Start guidance was last selected.

Store a Destination

Up to 250 destinations can be saved and reused.



(***Itinerary***)

Move **Up** to the destination in question and press ENTER or **Right**. Use **Up** / **Down** to select <*Store*> from the submenu and press ENTER.



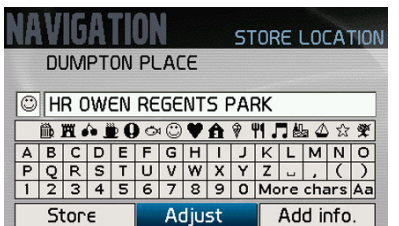
The Map scroll function can also be used to save a destination (Refer to 'Map Scroll', page 11.34).

All stored destinations are marked with symbols on the map. Move **Up** to the symbols. Use **Right** / **Left** to select and press ENTER. The name of a stored destination is indicated automatically.

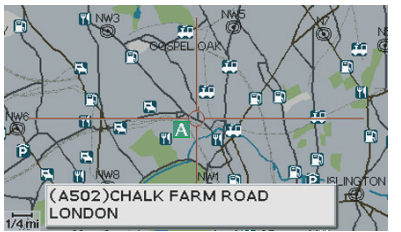
Press BACK to erase the original name and replace it with a new one.

Select <*Store*> to save the destination.

Adjust



Select <*Adjust*> and press ENTER to move the position of the stored destination on the map.



Use **Navigator** to move the cross to the new position of the stored destination and press ENTER. Then select <*Save Destination*> and press ENTER to save. Select <*Scale*> to change the scale.

Add Info.



Select <*Add info.*> and press ENTER to add additional information on the stored destination.



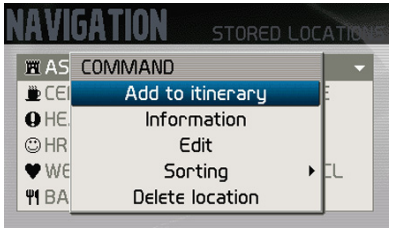
Use **Up** / **Down** to select a field and press ENTER to add new information or edit exiting information.

Stored Destinations



(***Set destination*** > *Stored Locations)*

Press ENTER. A list of stored destinations is displayed.
A stored destination is a previously saved destination.



Move among the stored destinations using **Up** / **Down**. Press **Right** or ENTER to access the submenu.

Add to itinerary - Add the stored destination in the itinerary.

Information - Provides information on the stored destination.

Edit - Change the name, etc. of the stored destination.

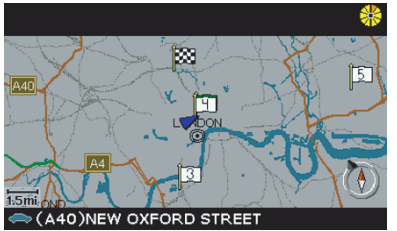
Sorting - Sort stored destinations by icon or name.

Delete Destination - Delete a stored destination.

Select an option using **Up** / **Down** and press ENTER.

Start Guidance

The <*Start guide*> option is only available when a valid destination has been entered.



When <*Start guide*> is selected, the system begins calculating the route and distance to the destination (during this time, a yellow / orange symbol is shown at the top of the screen).

If a detour is made from the planned route during the trip, the system automatically calculates a new route (Refer to 'Guidance', page 11.28).



If neither a street number nor an intersecting street is specified the system guides to the middle of the street chosen.

Start guide - The system guides to the destination.

Itinerary - Adds the destination to the itinerary.

Information - Provides information on the destination.

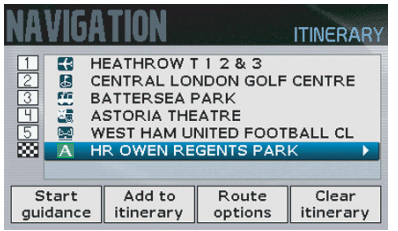
Information



The address, coordinates and in some cases the telephone number of a facility is shown under <*Information*>. Select <*Map*> and press ENTER to see the facility destination on the map.

Itinerary

An itinerary, containing several destinations, can be entered to avoid entering destination after destination during your trip. One destination with up to six intermediate destinations can be specified.



(***Itinerary***)

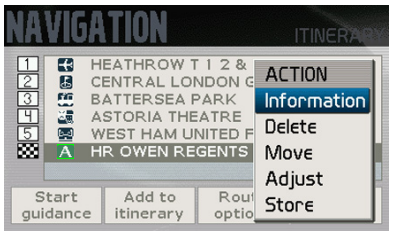
Start guidance - Starts guidance to the destination.

Add to itinerary - Add another destination.

Route options - Settings for route priorities.

Clear itinerary - Erase the entire itinerary.

Edit an Itinerary



Select a destination using **Up** / **Down** and press ENTER or **Right** to access options.

Information - Provides information on the destination.

Guidance

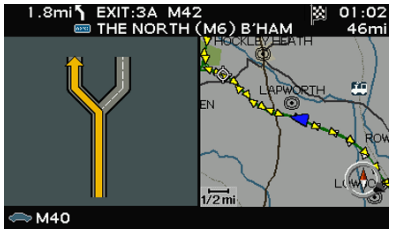
Delete - Clears the destination from the itinerary.

Move - Changes the placement of the destination in the itinerary.

Adjust - Changes the destination of the destination on the map.

Store - Saves the destination under *<Stored Destinations>*.

Select an option using **Up** / **Down** and press ENTER.



In map view press ENTER. When approaching an junction, a detailed junction map will indicate the type of manoeuvre required. Distance to and name of the next exit road are shown along the top edge of the map.

Road sign information is shown on the line underneath. If there is a road number and exit number or exit name, they are also shown.

The current position is indicated at the bottom of the screen.

Route Outline



(***Quick menu*** > *Map menu* > *Route outline)*

The destination and remaining distance are shown at the top of the screen. The next guidance point is highlighted.

This is followed by a list of remaining guidance points. In addition to the name of the road, the distance between guidance points and an arrow indicating the type of manoeuvre are shown.
Guidance points are deleted as they are passed. If a deviation is made from the given route, the system calculates a new one.

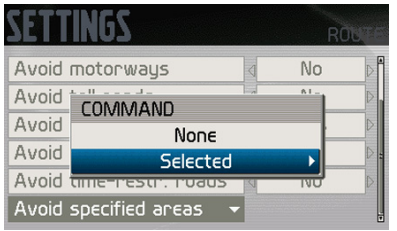
Arrow Navigation



(***Settings*** > *Map options*)

Guidance can be shown without a map. The system then shows an arrow that points in the direction you should turn. Select <*Hide*> to hide the map.

Avoid Areas



(***Settings*** > *Route options*)

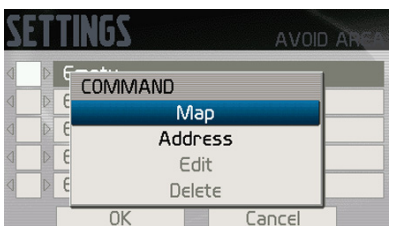
Specify specific areas the system is to avoid in calculating the route.

Move to <*Avoid specified areas*> using **Up** / **Down** and press **Right**. Select <*Selected*> and press **Right** again to specify areas.

None - Press ENTER to deactivate areas already activated.

Selected - Press **Right** to specify new areas. Press ENTER to activate areas already saved which are marked with a cross.

Avoid Area Options



(***Settings*** > *Route options* > *Avoid specified areas* > *Selected)*

Press ENTER**.** Choose option on the submenu using **Up** / **Down** and press ENTER.

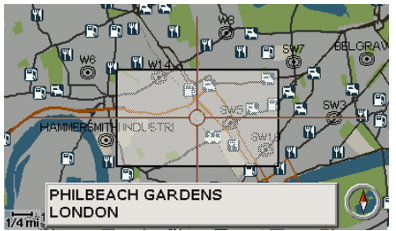
Map - Use the **Navigator** to indicate the area to be avoided directly on the map.

Address - Enter the address of the area to be avoided. The address constitutes the centre of the area.

Edit - Change the name of the saved area.

Delete - Erase a saved area. Confirm with *OK*.

Specify an Area on the Map

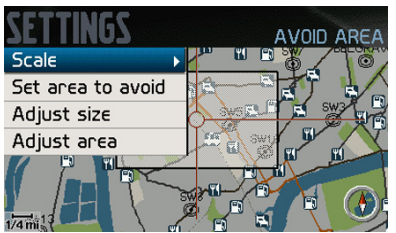


Select <*Map*>. Using the **Navigator**, move the centre point of the hairline cross to the centre of the area to be avoided.

The name of the destination the centre point rests on is displayed at the bottom of the map.

The rectangle indicates the size of the area.

Press ENTER to obtain the submenu.



Select option in the submenu using **Up** / **Down** and press ENTER.

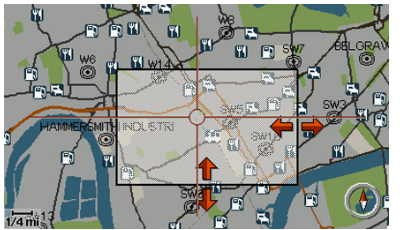
Scale **-** Specify the size of the area to be avoided.

Set area to avoid **-** Saves specified area.

Adjust size **-** Change the size of the area.

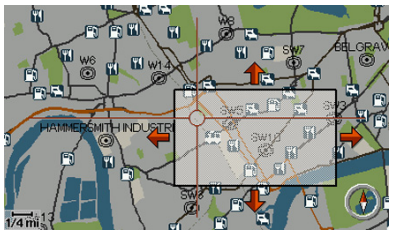
Adjust area **-** Move the area.

Change Size of Map Area



Change the size of the area using the **Navigator.** Press BACK to undo the change, or press ENTER and select <*Avoid selected area*> to save.

Move the Map Area



Move the area using the **Navigator.** Press BACK to undo the move, or press ENTER and select *<Avoid selected area>* to save.

Saved Specified Areas



Choose which of the saved areas are to be avoided in calculating route. These are marked with a cross. Step using **Up** / **Down** to choose among the areas. Mark or un-mark using **Right** / **Left**.

OK - Activates areas marked with a cross. The areas activated are displayed on the map image.

Cancel - Undoes settings made and returns to Route options settings.

Specify an Area Address

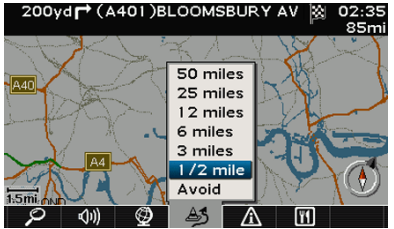


Select *<Address>*. Enter the address of the area to be avoided. The address then constitutes the centre of the area. Use **Up** / **Down** to move between the rows and press ENTER to enter the address.

Select - The specified area is shown on the map. Press ENTER to obtain the submenu. Choose *<Scale>* to specify the size of the area to be avoided. Select *<Set area> to avoid* to save the area. Select *<Adjust size>* to change the size of the area or select *<Adjust area>* to move the area.

Cancel - Returns to saved areas.

Detour – Alternate Route



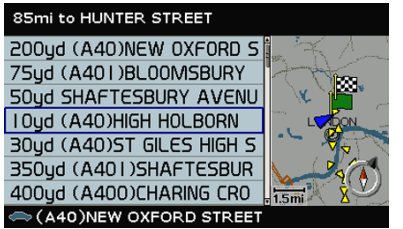
When the detour function is used, the system calculates an alternate route to avoid part of the calculated route. This is used to avoid construction, for example.

Press ENTER in map view to access the Quick menus. Move to the Detour Quick menu using **Right** / **Left**.

Set the number of kilometres the route is to be avoided using **Up** / **Down** and press ENTER. The system then calculates a new route and avoids the original route for the specified number of kilometres starting from the current position.

A destination must be specified for the function to work.

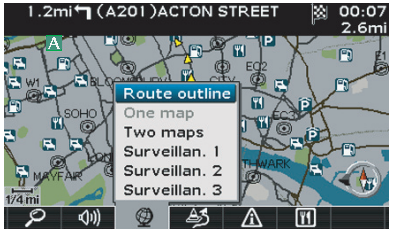
Avoid Specific Street



Select <*Avoid*> from the detour menu and press ENTER. A list of streets that are part of the route are displayed. Move to the street to be avoided using Up / Down and press ENTER.

Several streets can be selected by moving with **Up** / **Down** and confirming each selection with ENTER. The system then calculates a new route.

Map View



Press ENTER in map view to access the Quick menu. Move to the Map Quick menu using **Right** / **Left**.

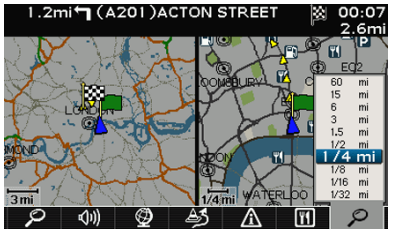
Route outline - View a list of approaching guidance points (Refer to 'Guidance', page 11.28).

Surveillance 1, 2 or 3 - View one of the areas set previously for surveillance (Refer to 'Traffic Surveillance', page 11.40).

Two maps - View two map images.

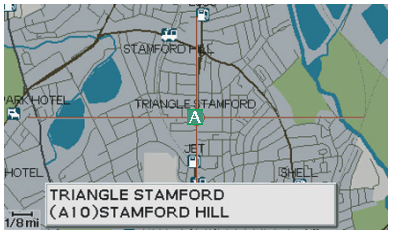
Two Maps

One or two map images can be selected. Different degrees of magnification can be selected for each map image of the same area.



Select <*One map*> on the Map Quick menu and press ENTER to return to the previous right-hand map image.

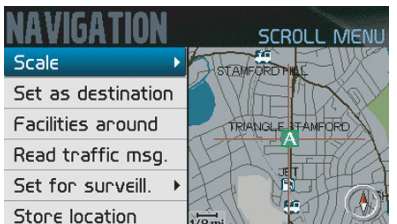
Map Scroll



While in map view move the **Navigator** in any direction activate Map scroll. The **Navigator** can then be used to move the cross freely over a large area with a detailed scale.

The destination that corresponds to the cross position is shown at the bottom of the map.

Scroll Menu



Press ENTER to access the scroll menu.

Scale - Function to temporarily change the scale. Press BACK to return to the original scale and to return to the car's position on the map.

Set as destination - Select a destination on the map as a destination or intermediate destination (Refer to 'Specify Point on the Map', page 11.20).

Facilities around - The system searches for facilities around a specific point on the map. The system searches in a circle with a radius of 2 km (1.5 mile). If less than 40 facilities are found, the search is extended to a radius of max. 100 km (62 mile).

Read traffic msg. - Use **Navigator** to select from among the traffic messages displayed on the screen.

Set for surveill. - Specify an area on the map that can then be easily monitored.

Store Destination - Save a Destination on the map.

Select an option using **Up** / **Down** and press ENTER.

Map Scale

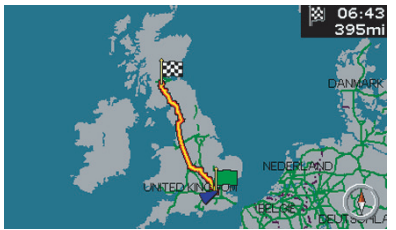


Press ENTER in Map view to access the Quick menus. Move to the Map scale Quick menu using **Right** / **Left**. Choose a scale using **Up** / **Down** and press ENTER.

If two map images are displayed on the screen, use **Right** / **Left** to move to the map that is to be changed (Refer to 'Map View', page 11.33).

Scale is indicated at the bottom of the screen.
Select the option (green flag + finish flag) at the top of the Map scale Quick menu and press ENTER.

The thick line on the map shows the whole route from start to destination.



The option (car + finish flag) second from top on the Map scale Quick menu shows the remaining route from the present position to the destination.

Press ENTER to change scale. Move the **Navigator** to obtain map scroll.

Map Icons

- Aston Martin Dealer
- Automobile club
- Airport
- Bus station
- Conference / Exhibition centre
- Cinema
- Casino
- Compressed natural gas
- Athletics stadium
- Amusement park
- Bowling
- Car hire
- City centre
- Car park
- Ferry terminal
- Gasol/LPG
- Hospital
- Hotel
- Large company
- Marina
- Outdoor area
- Parking garage
- Park & ride
- Railway station
- Golf course
- Historical monument
- Ice skating rink
- Museum
- Night club / Music club
- Public sport airport
- Petrol station
- Restaurant
- Rest area

Shopping centre	Ski resort
Theatre / Opera	Tourist attraction
Town hall	Toll booth
Tourist information	University / college
Winery	
Other danger	Traffic queue
Road narrows	Traffic diversion
Oncoming traffic	Incident

Slippery road surface	Slow traffic
Road works	Slow traffic in both directions
Accident	Area message
Information	Other information
Parking information	

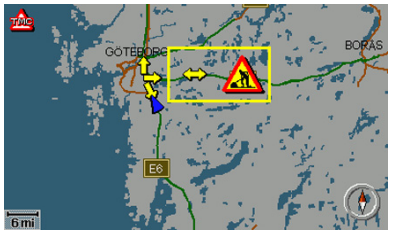
Traffic Information

Traffic information (TMC) is available as an option and is only supported in certain countries.

Delay Time

Some traffic messages transmitted also contain information on escalation. On all scales up to 5 km (3 mile) the yellow or red line along the route is also displayed in addition to the symbol. The length of this line corresponds to the extent of the traffic problem.

Read Messages

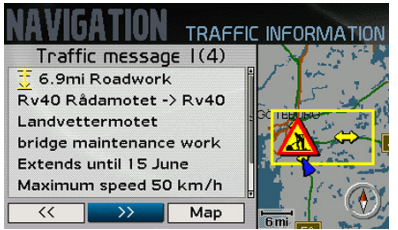


While in map view move the **Navigator** in any direction activate Map scroll. Press ENTER to access the scroll menu.

Move to <*Read traffic msg.*> and press ENTER. Use **Navigator** to move among the different traffic messages.

Relevant messages are marked with a red or yellow frame. Press ENTER for detailed traffic information. Press BACK to be able to move among relevant messages again.

Press ENTER for detailed traffic information.



The number of traffic messages relevant to the map area is indicated on the screen. Detailed information on the traffic problem is also shown.

The extent of the problem and distance from the present position is shown at the top. Duration, roads affected and limitations regarding speed, vehicle width, vehicle height, etc. are shown in the extent to which they are available.

Toggle between the arrows and press ENTER to shift between available messages.
The amount of traffic information available depends on the scale of the map (larger area - more information) (Refer to 'Map Scale', page 11.35).

Traffic Symbols

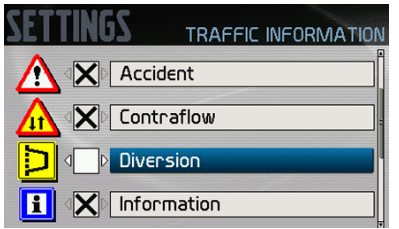


Traffic information is accessible during the trip if it is sent within the area in question. If there are traffic messages within the area shown on the map, they are marked with symbols.

The symbols can have two colours. Yellow indicates important information while red indicates urgent information.

Change the scale to access traffic information within a larger or smaller area.
Traffic information is always available, even if no destination is specified.

Options



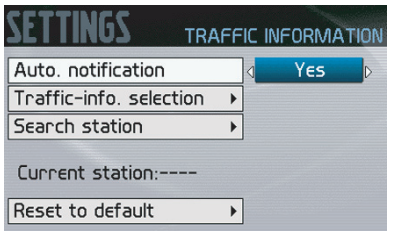
(***Settings*** > *Traffic information* > *Traffic-info. selection)*

Select which traffic information symbols (traffic messages) the system should show on the map and take into account when calculating the route. These are activated with a cross.
Use **Up** / **Down** to select from among the symbols. Activate or deactivate using **Right** / **Left**. Confirm settings made using ENTER.

A scroll bar on the right-hand side indicates that there are several alternatives in the list.

Traffic information symbols can also be selected via the Quick menu (Refer to 'Menu Structure', page 11.5).

Auto Notification



(***Settings*** > *Traffic Info.* > *Auto. notification*)

Yes - To make it possible to select an alternate route around any traffic problems (Refer to 'Avoid Area Options', page 11.29).

No - Switch off auto notification.

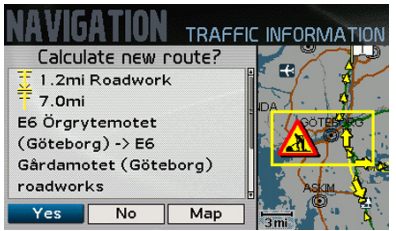
Avoid Traffic Problems



(***Settings*** > *Route options* > *Avoid traffic problems)*

No - If the system is not to avoid roads with traffic problems when calculating the route.

Yes - If the system is to avoid roads with traffic problems when calculating the route.



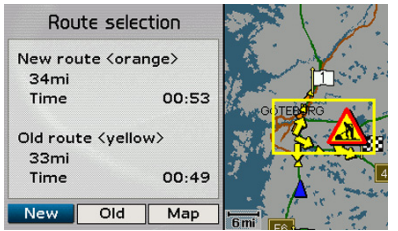
When a traffic message is received that affects the planned route, the system can calculate an alternate route.

Yes - The system calculates an alternate route to avoid the traffic problem.

No - The system continues with the original route.

Map - Sets to map scroll mode. Move among the different messages.

New or Old Route



If the system calculates an alternate route, the new route is shown in orange while the old route is shown in yellow. Information is also given on the overall length of both routes as well as the estimated travel time to the destination.

If there is no alternate route, the system will indicate such.

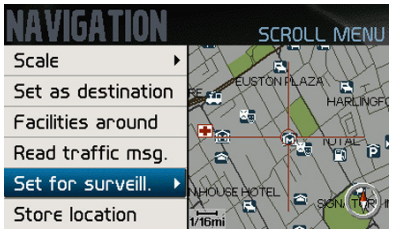
New - The system selects the new route.

Old - The system selects the original route.

Map - Shows the alternate and original routes on the map.

Select an option using **Right** or **Left** and press ENTER.

Traffic Surveillance

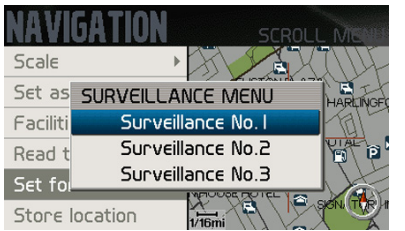


In order to quickly check the traffic situation in an area, one or more sections of road can be monitored. Select map scroll to set the map over the area to be monitored, such as a section of road where there is a risk of traffic queues.

While in map view move the **Navigator** in any direction activate Map scroll. Use the **Navigator** to move the cross on the map. Set the cross over the area to be monitored and press ENTER to access the scroll menu. Move **Down** to <*Set for surveill.*> and press ENTER or **Right** to access the surveillance menu.

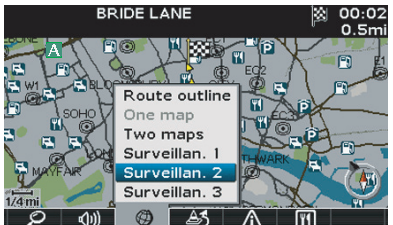
Store Surveillance

Three different areas can be stored.



Select <*Surveillance No. 1, 2* or *3*> and press ENTER.

Show Stored Surveillance Map



Press ENTER in map view to access the Quick menu. Move to the map menu using **Right** / **Left**.
Select <*Surveillan. 1, 2* or *3*> to see one of the areas set for surveillance.

(Q) The position of the car on the map is wrong or jumps.

(A) The GPS system indicates the position of the car with an accuracy of about 20 metres. There is a greater chance of error when driving on roads lying parallel to another road, winding roads, roads on several levels and after driving a long distance without making any distinctive turns. High mountains, buildings, tunnels, viaducts, over/underpasses etc. also have a negative affect on the reception of GPS signals, which means that accuracy in calculating the position of the car may decrease.

(Q) The navigation system does not always calculate the fastest/shortest road.

(A) When calculating a route, distance, width of road, type of road, number of right or left turns, roundabouts etc. are all taken into account in order to produce the best theoretical route. A more efficient selection of route may be possible based on experience and knowledge of the area.

(Q) The navigation system uses toll roads, motorways and ferries even though I chose to avoid them.

(A) When calculating routes over longer distances, for technical reasons, the system can only use larger roads when calculating a route extending over a long distance. If *NO* is selected for toll roads and motorways, they are avoided to the greatest possible extent and are only used if there is no other reasonable alternative.

(Q) The position of the car on the map is incorrect after transportation.

(A) If the car is transported, for example by ferry or train, or in such a way as to impede the reception of GPS signals, it can take up to 5 minutes before the position of the car is correctly calculated.

(Q) The position of the car on the map is incorrect after the car battery has been disconnected.

(A) If power has been cut from the GPS antenna, it can take more than 15 minutes for the GPS signals to be received correctly and the position of the car to be calculated.

(Q) The map image does not correspond with the real situation.

(A) Factors such as the constant expansion and rebuilding of the road network, new traffic regulations constantly being introduced etc. means that the digital map database is not always complete. The information stored in the maps is constantly being developed and updated. An Aston Martin Dealer can provide further information.

(Q) The scale of the map sometimes changes.

(A) Scale is affected by vehicle speed. At speeds over 140 km/h (87 m.p.h.) the largest possible degree of magnification is 250 m (820 ft). Once speed decreases to 120 km/h (74.5 m.p.h.), the system is once again able to display all degrees of magnification. If no detailed map information is available, the largest degree of magnification is 500 m (1640 ft) regardless of speed.

(Q) The expected menu option is missing.

(A) Look at the settings that have been made. Select *Reset to default* to restore the original settings.

(Q) The system shows the route I am already on when I request *Calculate new route* or *Detour*.

(A) The system cannot find a good alternative to the current route.

(Q) The car symbol on screen jumps forwards or spins.

(A) The system may need a few seconds to sense the position and movement of the car before driving off. Switch off both the system and the engine. Start again, but remain stationary for a while before starting to drive.

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

Maintenance

Contents

Introduction 12.2
Vehicle Jacking 12.3
Servicing Precautions 12.4
Dangerous Substances 12.5
Emergency Items 12.6
Maintenance Items 12.7
Owner Maintenance 12.8
Opening / Closing the Bonnet 12.8
Fluid Levels 12.10
Windscreen Blade Replacement 12.14
Brake Pad 'Bedding-in' 12.14
Wheels and Tyres 12.15
Winter Tyres 12.17
Tyre Sealant System 12.18
Transporting and Towing 12.22
Battery Warnings 12.23
Battery 12.23
Battery Charge 12.24
Battery Protection Mode 12.28
Electrical Start From Another Vehicle 12.30
Fuses 12.32
Bulbs 12.36
Door Window Reset 12.40
Bodywork and Fittings 12.40
Vehicle Cleaning 12.40
Vehicle Storage 12.44

Introduction

Each item in the Service Schedules must be performed on time as failure to do so may void the New Car Warranty or other warranties. It is the owner's responsibility to see that the vehicle is maintained properly and in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedules.

Due to the sophistication of the various systems and the specialised equipment required to maintain your vehicle, owner maintenance should be restricted to the routine procedures described in this Owner's Guide. If you think that your car is not functioning properly, please return it to an Aston Martin Dealer to be checked professionally.

Restraint Systems

Aston Martin recommend that the inflatable (airbags) restraint systems and seat belt components installed to this vehicle are replaced at 10 (ten) year intervals from the date of manufacture on the certification label.

Electronic Fuel Injection

⚠ Warning ⚠
If the fuel system is allowed to run dry irreparable damage to the fuel pumps may occur.

The electronic fuel injection system requires special equipment and test facilities to set up and maintain so that the vehicle gives maximum performance coupled with economy, reliability and safe vehicle emissions. You are, therefore, strongly advised to entrust all service work to an Aston Martin Dealer.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Any modifications or additions to the fuel system not specifically designed by Aston Martin are prohibited. If carried out, they may cause damage to the fuel system which in some circumstances could result in fire. All Service Action Campaigns must be undertaken by an Aston Martin Dealer.

Parts and Lubricants

When undertaking a servicing task only parts, materials, lubricants, etc. that are specifically recommended by Aston Martin should be used. Failure to do so can result in damage to your vehicle and may invalidate your New Car Warranty or other warranties (Refer to 'Warranty', page C.1).

This vehicle's warranty may be invalidated if damage is caused by the use of improper engine oil. Low quality or obsolete oils do NOT provide the protection required by modern, high performance engines.

Failure to use engine oil that meets the required specification (Refer to 'Fluids', page 13.14) could cause excessive engine wear, a build up of sludge and deposits, and increased pollution. It could also lead to engine failure.

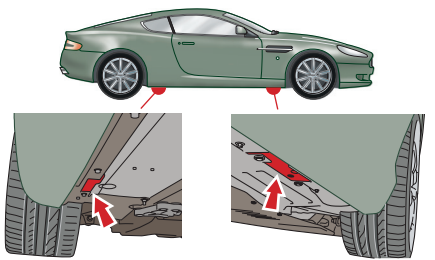
Emission Warranty

The emission control systems installed to vehicles for certain markets are covered by a separate warranty. A statement of the provisions is given in the Warranty section of this Owner's Guide. **You are advised to familiarise yourself with all warranty conditions at the earliest opportunity after taking delivery of your car**.

Vehicle Jacking

If this vehicle is to be raised using a vehicle jack ensure the following jacking points are use.

Do not raise the vehicle by placing a vehicle jack under the suspension arms.



⚠ Warning ⚠
Ensure that no persons are in the vehicle before jacking commences.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Ensure that the handbrake is set and that the vehicle is in 'Park' (Automatic) or 1st Gear (Manual).

⚠ Warning ⚠
Ensure that the vehicle is parked on firm and level ground to ensure a secure base for the jack.

Servicing Precautions

To avoid personal injury, the following safety precautions must be observed when the bonnet is open and the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Protect yourself against dangerous substances (Refer to 'Dangerous Substances').

⚠ Warning ⚠
Keep hands, hair, tools, items of clothing and jewellery clear of all drive belts, pulleys and operating mechanisms. The cooling fans may operate even though the engine is not running.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not breathe exhaust fumes. Exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide. Carbon monoxide is a dangerous gas, which is colourless and odourless and can cause unconsciousness and may be fatal. Never start or leave the engine running in an enclosed, unventilated area.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Avoid skin contact with all exhaust system and engine components, engine fluids and escaping steam. They may be hot and will burn you.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not work beneath the vehicle with a vehicle lifting jack as the only support. Place suitable stands under the vehicle.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Keep children and pets clear of the vehicle. Do not allow anyone inside the vehicle unless specifically working to your instructions.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Whenever possible work in the engine compartment with the engine cool, the ignition switched off and the vehicle battery disconnected.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Petrol is highly flammable and, in confined spaces, is also explosive and toxic. In the event of spillage, switch off the engine, use no naked flame or light. Do not smoke. Do not inhale fumes.

Dangerous Substances

⚠ *Warning* ⚠
Dangerous substances should be kept out of reach of children.

⚠ *Warning* ⚠
Many liquids and other substances used in motor vehicles are poisonous and should under no circumstances be consumed and should, so far as possible, be kept from contact with the skin. These substances include battery electrolyte, antifreeze, oil, brake and clutch fluid, petrol, windscreen washer additives, lubricants, refrigerant and various adhesives.

⚠ *Warning* ⚠
Particular care should be taken to avoid unnecessary contact with used engine oil. Always read carefully the instructions printed on labels or stamped on components and follow them carefully. Such instructions are included for reasons of your health and personal safety. Never disregard them.

Engine Oils

⚠ *Warning* ⚠
Prolonged and repeated contact with used engine oils can cause serious skin disorders, including dermatitis and cancer. Avoid excessive contact, wash thoroughly after contact. Keep out of reach of children. When your oil is changed, be sure that it is done by an experienced person. In addition, observe all laws regarding the disposal of waste oil and toxic fluids.

Protect The Environment

⚠ *Warning* ⚠
It is illegal to pollute drains, water courses, or soil. Use authorised waste disposal facilities, including civic amenity sites and garages providing facilities for receipt of used oil. If in doubt, contact your local authority for advice.

Emergency Items

The following emergency items are located in the boot.

Warning Triangle (A)

Always follow local regulations when placing a warning triangle.

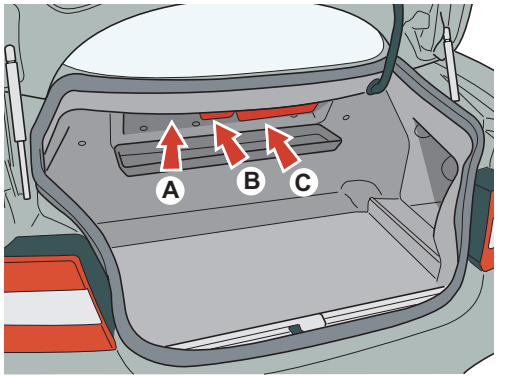
First Aid Kit (Option) (B)

A first aid kit is installed as standard for Belgium, Germany and the Middle East markets.

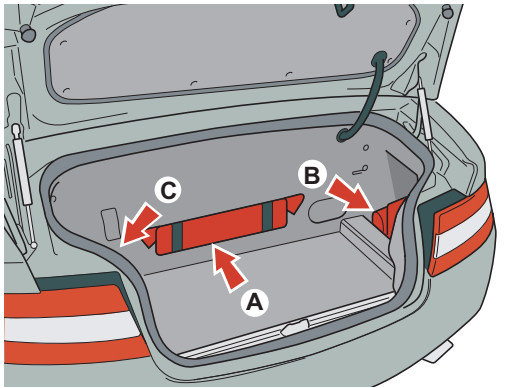
Tyre Sealant Kit (C)

(Refer to 'Tyre Sealant System', page 12.18).

Coupe Boot



Volante Boot



Tool Kit



A vehicle tool kit is located underneath the trim panel in the left hand side of the boot floor.

The tool kit consists of:

Towing Eye - (Refer to 'Transporting and Towing', page 12.22).

Screwdriver - For the removal of the front licence plate when installing the front towing eye.

Allen Key - For manual operation of the convertible roof (Volante only).

Road Wheel Lock Nut Socket (option) - For the removal of a road wheel(s) when Servicing / Maintenance is required.

Bulbs - (Refer to 'Bulbs', page 12.36).

Battery Conditioner

(Refer to 'Battery Conditioner', page 12.25)

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

Owner Maintenance

In the interests of safety and reliability, it is advisable to carry out the following checks at the intervals suggested (more frequently if your vehicle is heavily used or operating in adverse conditions), and always before starting on a long journey. Refer to the following pages for advice and check procedures.

Before Use Check:

- Operation of lamps, horn, indicators, wipers, washers and warning lamps
- Check there is sufficient fuel for the intended journey, particularly at night and before entering motorways
- Operation of the seat belts
- Operation of the brakes
- Check for fluid deposits underneath the vehicle

Weekly Checks

(daily if covering high mileage or touring)

- Tyres
- Coolant level
- Brake fluid level
- Power steering level
- Operate Air Conditioning
- Windscreen washer fluid level
- Check operation of windscreen washers

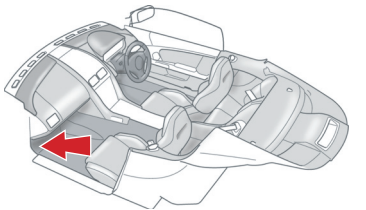
Engine Oil Level

Check the engine oil level every fourth fuel tank fill or weekly - which ever is the sooner.

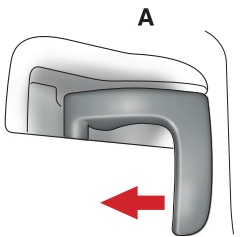
Opening / Closing the Bonnet

Opening

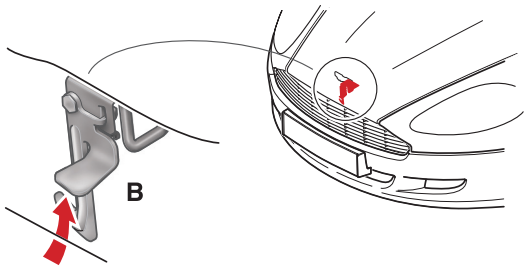
Take care not unintentionally to pull on or catch the Bonnet release lever.



Pull lever (A) to release the bonnet latch. The bonnet will rise but remain secured by the bonnet secondary catch.



Lift slightly on the bonnet front edge whilst pulling upward on the bonnet secondary catch (B) to release it. Lift the bonnet until fully open. The bonnet is held open by two gas struts.



If the windscreen wipers are switch on, they will temporarily rest in the park position while the bonnet is unlatched.

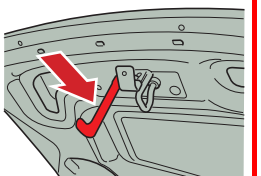
Closing

Before closing the bonnet, remove any tools, cleaning cloths, etc. from the engine compartment. Ensure that no one is obstructing the 'closing' area and that hands, clothing etc. are clear.

Lower the bonnet until it starts to fall under it's own weight. At that point let the bonnet fall to close.

⚠ Warning ⚠

Do not pull on the bonnet secondary catch to assist in closing the bonnet. This may displace the secondary catch. If the secondary catch is displaced it may not work correctly.



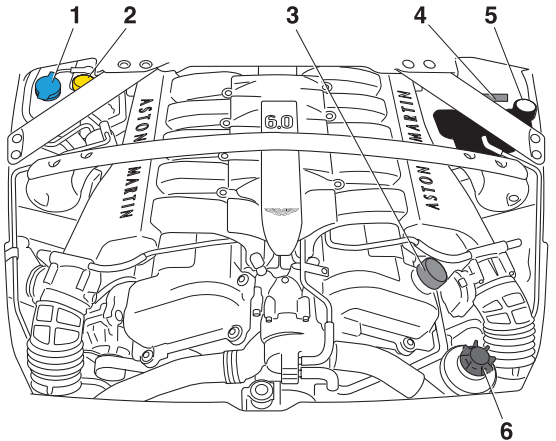
If the bonnet does not fully close the warning message 'Bonnet not fully closed' will appear in the message display right.

If the bonnet does not shut, open the bonnet again and repeat the closure procedure, this time assist using light hand pressure as the bonnet falls.

Do not press down hard on a bonnet that has not closed correctly. This may damage the bonnet.

Fluid Levels

Item 4 changes sides for left and right hand drive.



1. Washer Fluid Reservoir.
2. Brake Fluid Reservoir.
3. Engine Oil Filler Cap.
4. Engine Oil Dipstick.
5. Engine Coolant Reservoir.
6. Power Steering Fluid Reservoir.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Engine components may be hot and could cause severe burns.

Windscreen Wash Fluid Level



Top up as required. In winter, to prevent the windscreen wash fluid freezing, increase the fluid concentration (refer to the manufacturers recommendations on the windscreen wash fluid container).

When the level of screen wash fluid is low an information message will show in the message centre right and the amber warning lamp will illuminate.

Local regulations may restrict the use of volatile organic compounds (VOCs), which are commonly used as antifreeze agents in windscreen washer fluid. A windscreen washer fluid with limited VOC content should be used only if it provides adequate freeze resistance for all regions and climates in which the vehicle will be operated.

Windscreen Washer Jets

Washer jet housings are located on the rear edge of the bonnet. Each housing contains two washer jets.

Windscreen washer jets are set during manufacture and should not need adjustment. However, if adjustment is required, adjust up / down so that the fluid strikes between a third and half way up the windscreen.

Engine Oil Level

⚠ Warning ⚠
Engine oil and / or components may be hot and could cause severe burns.

Running the engine with engine oil below the lower mark or above the upper mark can cause serious engine damage.

This vehicle's warranty may be invalidated if damage is caused by the use of improper engine oil. Low quality or obsolete oils do NOT provide the protection required by modern, high performance engines.

Failure to use engine oil that meets the required specification (Refer to 'Fluids', page 13.14) could cause excessive engine wear, a build up of sludge and deposits, and increased pollution. It could also lead to engine failure.

The vehicle should be on level ground. If the engine has been running immediately prior to the check, wait several minutes after stopping the engine for the oil to drain back into the sump.

1. Withdraw and wipe the dipstick clean, using a lint free cloth.
2. Insert the dipstick, withdraw again. The oil level should read between the Min. and Max. marks.



Approximately one litre is required to bring the level from Min. to Max.



3. Top-up if required.

   Remove the filler cap and add oil. Wait for the oil to settle then check again. Add more oil if required. **Do not overfill**.
4. Replace the filler cap securely.

Brake Fluid Level

⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not drive the vehicle if the brake fluid level is below the Min. mark.

Ensure brake fluid does not contact the paint work during the topping-up operation. Serious paint work damage can result. If a spillage does occur, immediately flush any brake fluid from the paint work with clean, fresh water and then wipe with a clean damp cloth.

Wipe the reservoir cap clean before removing to prevent ingress of contaminants.



The brake fluid level should read between the Min. and Max. marks.

1. Remove the reservoir cap. Top up to the indicated Max. level.
2. Install the reservoir cap securely.

Engine Coolant Level Check

⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not remove the filler cap until the coolant system has cooled. Scalding can be caused by escaping steam or coolant.

Use a cloth or glove to protect hands and protect face and arms adequately.

1. Remove the pressure cap to check the coolant level. The correct coolant level is to the top of the reservoir tank. Top up with the correct antifreeze mix (Refer to 'Fluids', page 13.14), if required.
2. Ensure the filler cap is secure after topping up.



Do not over tighten.

If required to remove the pressure cap before the engine is cold, **use gloves or a protective cloth** and slowly loosen the pressure cap. Allow residual pressure to slowly drop. Continue to turn the pressure cap until it is released.

Power Steering Fluid Level

Ensure power steering fluid does not contact the paint work during topping up. Serious paint work damage can result. If a spillage does occur, immediately flush any power steering fluid from the paint work with clean fresh water, then wipe with a clean damp cloth.

Always check the reservoir level when the engine is cold and with the front road wheels in the straight ahead position.



Wipe the reservoir cap clean before removing to prevent an ingress of contaminants.

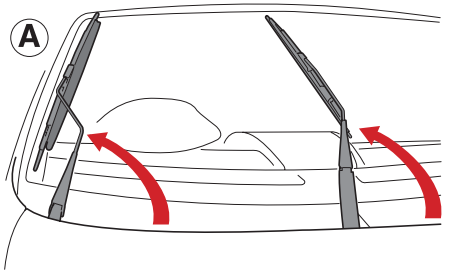
1. Remove the reservoir cap and wipe the dipstick clean. Replace and remove again. The fluid level should read between the Min. and Max. marks.
2. If required, top-up fluid level. **Do not overfill**.

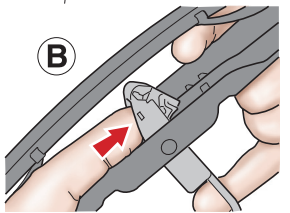
ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN

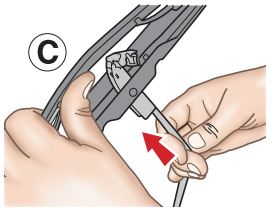
Windscreen Blade Replacement

To replace the windscreen wiper blades the wiper arms must be set at 90° to the vehicle (A).

1. While holding in buttons 8 and 9 (infotainment keypad) turn the ignition key from position 'O' to position 'II'.
   This will manoeuvre the wiper blade arms to the 90° position. Return the ignition key to position 'O'.
2. Lift the wiper arm(s) up and remove the worn wiper blade(s). Install the new wiper blade(s) and lower the wiper arm(s).
3. After replacing the wiper blade either:
   - Turn the ignition key back through to position 'II' to lower the wiper arms. Return the ignition key to position 'O' or remove.
   - Operate the wiper stalk - the wiper arms will complete the request and then park.







Brake Pad 'Bedding-in'

Failure to 'bed-in' new brake pads will result in reduced brake performance and possible brake judder or squeal.

After the installation of new brake pads, brake performance will be limited, as the brake discs and pads need to be 'Bedded-in'. For the first 400 km (250 mile) of new brake pad use, avoid excessive braking (hard stops from high speed, alpine descents, etc.).

Wheels and Tyres

Tyres of the correct type, manufacturer and dimensions, with correct cold inflation pressures are an integral part of every vehicle's design. Regular maintenance of tyres contributes not only to safety, but to the designed function of the vehicle.

Roadholding, steering and braking are especially vulnerable to incorrectly pressurised, badly installed or worn tyres.

Tyres of the correct size and type, but of different make have widely varying characteristics.

Only install tyres approved by Aston Martin (Refer to 'Tyres', page 13.7).

Tyre Pressures

Ensure that correct tyre pressures are carefully maintained (Refer to 'Tyres', page 13.7). Road holding, steering, braking and tyre wear are especially vulnerable to incorrect tyre pressures.

Check tyre pressures regularly and before starting any journey. Re-inflate any tyre with a low pressure at the earliest opportunity.

Pressures increase slightly when the tyres are hot. For an accurate reading, pressures should be checked when the tyres are cold. After adjusting the tyre pressures, ensure that the valve caps are securely replaced to provide an additional air seal and to prevent the ingress of dirt.

Tyre Service

Because of the high performance potential of this vehicle, Aston Martin strongly recommend replacement of any damaged or worn tyre.

The recommended tyres for this vehicle are asymmetrical and must be installed to the wheel with the tyre mark 'Outside' on the outside of the wheel rim.

They are also of different sizes on the front and rear axles, therefore complete wheels cannot be swapped from one side of the vehicle to the other or between axles.

Damage

Tyres should be examined at regular intervals for wear and damage. Inspect the tyre treads and sidewalls for damage, i.e. bulges in the tread or the sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or the sidewalls. If damage is observed or suspected have the tyre inspected by a tyre professional.

Stones or other objects which have become lodged in the tyre treads should be carefully removed.

Flat Spots

It is a characteristic of high performance tyres that temporary 'flat spots' may develop if the vehicle is left standing in high or low ambient temperatures for any length of time.

These 'flat spots' will manifest themselves as minor vibrations when the car is first driven from cold. As the tyres warm up to operating temperature, normal tyre shape should be restored and the vibrations cease. If vibrations persist, consult your Aston Martin Dealer.

Age

Tyres degrade over time, even when they are not being used. It is recommended that tyres generally be replaced after 6 years of normal service. Heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process.

Local regulations on tyre life may apply.

New Tyres

New tyres should not be installed to the front wheels in combination with worn rear tyres, as rear end stability will be affected. When new tyres are required consult your Aston Martin Dealer for advice if the rear tyres are also worn.

Each wheel and tyre unit must be balanced dynamically to ensure efficient steering, optimum tyre wear and maximum ride comfort. Because of the potentially high speeds, it is essential that wheel balancing is carried out when new tyres are installed.

'Running-In' New Tyres

When new tyres have been installed, speed should be limited, particularly during the first 80 km (50 mile) or so of driving. Fast cornering, hard braking, and harsh acceleration should also be avoided during this period.

Tread Wear Indicators



Tread wear indicators (A) are incorporated into the construction of all tyres. These indicators are integral moulded ribs spaced at regular intervals around the circumference of the tyre and extend across the full width of the tread, in all primary grooves.

When a tyre has worn causing one or more of the indicators to be flush with the outer face of the tread the tyre has reached its wear limit. It then becomes illegal in certain countries and must be replaced.

Winter Tyres

The tyres installed as original equipment are designed with a rubber compound, tread pattern and width specially suited for high speeds in normal road conditions, but they are less suitable during extremes of low temperatures, snow and ice. The use of winter tyres will considerably improve handling during these conditions.

Winter Tyres

Only use Aston Martin approved winter tyres.

Winter tyres must be used in vehicle sets, that is, installed on all four wheels. Four special wheel rims and winter tyres (Refer to 'Winter Tyres', page 13.7) are required for severe weather driving. Do not exceed the tyre speed rating when using winter tyres.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Maximum speed with winter tyres tires is 240 km/h (150m.p.h.).

Snow (Chains) Spiders

These are available from your Aston Martin Dealer for temporary use when driving in heavy snow conditions. Snow spiders should only be installed to the rear (driven) wheels.

The maximum speed when using snow spiders is 48 km/h (30 m.p.h.). Remove the snow spiders immediately the roads are clear of snow.

Ensure the installation instructions supplied with the snow spiders are kept in a safe place.

Tyre Sealant System

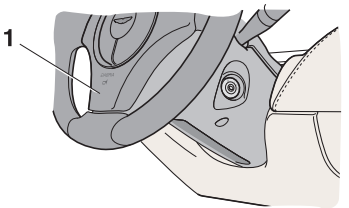
⚠ Warning ⚠
Read the instructions and warnings carefully before using the Tyre Sealant System.

- Ensure the vehicle is parked far enough from traffic so that there is no danger from passing vehicles and so that you do not disrupt the traffic. Warn other vehicles using the warning triangle
- Read the user instructions and warnings on the system
- The system should only be used between – 40°C and 70°C (– 40°F and 158°F)
- The system will effectively seal a tyre that was punctured by an object with a diameter of up to 6mm (1/4″). It is possible that a tyre, especially with greater damage, will not be sealed. Do not remove objects that punctured the tyre if they are still lodged in the tyre
- A maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 m.p.h.) may not be exceeded at any time after sealing the tyre with the system
- The system provides only a **temporary emergency repair** for continuing the journey up to 200 km (125 mile) or to the nearest Aston Martin Dealer
- If the nearest Aston Martin Dealer is over a 200 km (125 mile) away

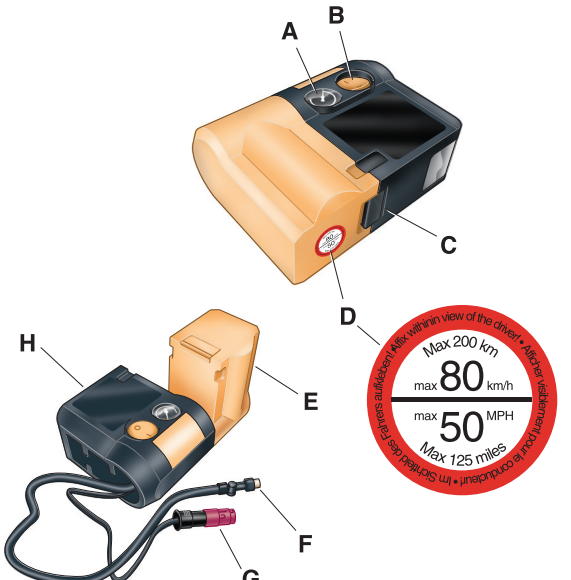
  Arrange for collection under the Aston Martin European Emergency Service scheme
- The sealant bottle needs to be exchanged before it expires. **Do not** use the system after the expiry date on the sealant bottle or casing has been reached. Contact your nearest Aston Martin Dealer
- Do not attempt to inflate other objects without using a system adapter and do not inflate objects with a volume greater than 50 litre (1.8 ft^3) (air mattresses, rubber boats, etc.). Do not let the system pump air for more than 10 minutes without switching it off and allowing it to cool down

⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not use the system to seal a tyre that was damaged while driving with insufficient air pressure (e.g. tyre cuts, cracks, bumps or similar damage). Do not use the system to seal tyres with side wall damage. Only punctures in the tread area of tyres may be sealed.

Sealing a Punctured Tyre



1. Remove speed label (D) from the system and place it on the steering wheel, below the metal ring (1), as a reminder to not exceed the Maximum speed.
2. Ensure that the orange On / Off switch (B) is in the '0' position.
3. Remove the lead (G) and the hose (F) from the compartment (H) on the side of the system.
4. Remove the valve cap from the punctured tyre and screw the hose (F) of the system onto the tyre valve.
5. Place the lead plug (G) into the accessory socket of the vehicle.



6. Release the safety latch (C) and turn the orange part of the system through 90° (E), so that the orange part is in the vertical position.

> ⚠ ***Warning*** ⚠
> ***It is dangerous to inhale car fumes. Do not leave the engine running in closed or insufficiently ventilated areas.***

7. Start the engine of the vehicle (Only if the vehicle is in an open and well ventilated area).

> ⚠ ***Warning*** ⚠
> ***Do not stand directly beside the tyre while the compressor is pumping. Watch the side wall of the tyre. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage turn off the compressor. The journey should not be continued. Contact your nearest Aston Martin Dealer.***

8. Turn the orange On / Off switch (B) to position 'I'.

While pumping the sealant through the tyre valve a temporary pressure of 4-6 bar (60-90 psi) may arise. After approximately 30 seconds this pressure will drop.

9. Inflate the tyre to a minimum pressure of 1.8 bar (26 psi) but do not exceed 3.5 bar (51 psi) (Pump for approximately 7 minutes). Switch the system off to check the true pressure in the tyre.

Danger of overheating.
Do not allow the compressor to run for more than 10 minutes without allowing it to cool down.

10. If a pressure of 1.8 bar (26 psi) is not achieved in 10 minutes, disconnect the system and cautiously drive the vehicle forward and backward approximately 10 m (30 ft) to distribute the sealant in the tyre. Then repeat step 9.

⚠ Warning ⚠
If a tyre pressure of 1.8 bar (26 psi) still cannot be reached then the tyre can not be sealed. Do not attempt to re-inflate the tyre. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

11. Remove the hose from the tyre valve and replace the valve cap. Remove lead from the accessory socket. Return the orange part of the system to its original position and fasten the latch. Stow the system safely in the vehicle.

⚠ Warning ⚠
A speed of 80 km/h (50 m.p.h.) may not be exceeded after using the system and the sealed tyre must be replaced as soon as possible (recommended maximum distance 200 km (125 mile).

12. Immediately continue with your journey for approximately 3 km (2 mile) at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 m.p.h.) to allow the sealant to seal the puncture.

⚠ Warning ⚠
If the pressure in the tyre after driving for 3 km (2 mile) is below 1.3 bar (19 psi) the tyre has not been effectively sealed. The journey should not be continued. Contact your nearest Aston Martin Dealer.

13. Stop after driving for approximately 3 km (2 mile) and re-check the tyre pressure by following these steps:
    1 Connect the hose to the tyre valve.
    2 Plug the lead plug into the accessory socket.
    3 Read the pressure off the pressure gauge.

14. If the tyre pressure is more than 1.3 bar (19 psi) then switch the system on and inflate the tyre to the required tyre pressure (Refer to 'Tyres', page 13.7) (Pump for approximately 2 minutes.) Use the pressure release valve on the hose (F) if the tyre pressure is too high.
15. Remove the hose from the tyre valve, replace the valve cap, disconnect the lead and stow the system safely in the vehicle.

⚠ Warning ⚠
After a longer period of rest, the tyre pressure should be rechecked.

16. After using the system the hose and connected parts must be exchanged. The sealant bottle and replacement parts can be obtained and exchanged at your Aston Martin Dealer.

To Pump Air Only

1. Ensure that the orange On / Off switch (B) is in the '0' position.
2. Remove the lead and the hose from the compartment (H) on the side of the system.
3. Connect the hose to the valve
4. Do not release the safety latch (C) and do not turn the orange part of the system into the 90° position (E). The orange part should be in the horizontal position.
5. Place the lead plug (G) into the accessory socket of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning ⚠
It is dangerous to inhale car fumes. Do not leave engine running in closed or insufficiently ventilated areas.

6. Start the engine of the car (Only if the car is in an open and well ventilated area).
7. Turn the orange On / Off switch (B) to the 'I' position.
8. Inflate the item to the required pressure.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not inflate items with pressure requirements of more than 4 bar (58 psi).

Danger of overheating.
Do not allow the compressor to run for more than 10 minutes without allowing it to cool down.

9. Turn the orange On / Off switch (B) to the '0' position when the required pressure has been reached.

Transporting and Towing

The recommended method for moving a defective vehicle is to have it transported in a purpose built, covered, vehicle transporter.

When moving the vehicle by transporter ensure the vehicle is not lashed down, to the transporter, by the suspension control arms.

The front towing eye is only for emergency use when moving the vehicle for **short distances**, e.g. If it is causing an obstruction or if it requires winching onto a transporter.

If moving the vehicle in such a situation:

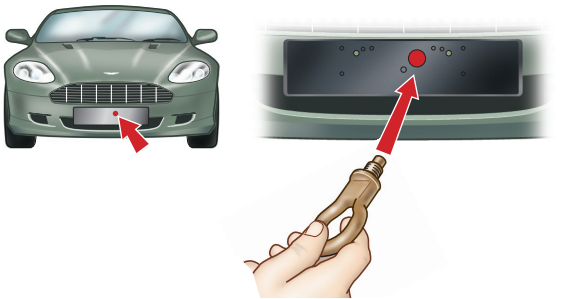
Power braking and power steering are not available with the engine turned off. Substantially higher brake pedal pressures and steering effort are required.

1. Remove the towing eye from its storage location in the boot.
2. Use the screwdriver, provided in the tool kit, to remove the front licence plate, then install the towing eye to the exposed female threads.

The towing eye incorporates a left hand thread.

Protect vehicle paint work when installing the towing eye.

3. Select 'Neutral'. Turn the ignition key to position 'I'.
4. When being towed use the handbrake or footbrake very gently as required to prevent excessive slack in the tow rope.



If a transmission fault is present, this vehicle must be transported.

Battery Warnings

The following warnings are located on the vehicle battery.

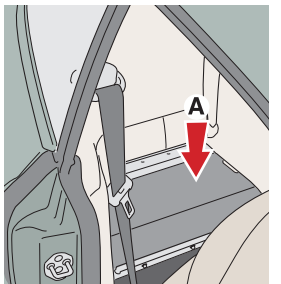




Battery

The engine must never be run with the battery disconnected.

The battery (A) is maintenance free and should only require checking by your Aston Martin Dealer during regular vehicle services.



Apart from vehicle recovery, this vehicle must not be driven if the vehicle battery is incapable of starting the engine. In this case the vehicle battery must be replaced.

Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Wash hands after handling the battery posts, terminals and any related battery accessories. These items contain lead and lead compounds.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide proper ventilation.

⚠ Warning ⚠
When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and/or damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Keep batteries out of reach of children.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Batteries contain sulphuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

Battery Disposal

Always dispose of automotive batteries in a responsible manner.

Follow your local authorised standards for disposal. Call your local authorised recycling centre to find out more about recycling automotive batteries.

Battery Charge

Various systems, for example, the clock, security systems and Infotainment centre system continue to drain battery power even with the ignition switched off.

A **new fully charged** battery has the ability to start this vehicle, if left unused, for up to 45 days without the battery conditioner being used (Refer to 'Battery Conditioner', page 12.25)or the Battery Disconnect switch being activated (Refer to 'Battery Disconnect Switch (BDS)', page 12.27).

In cold climates this time may be reduced.

For vehicles installed with the Aston Martin Tracking system this time will reduce to approx. 22 days.

Battery charge can be drained excessively in a number of ways:

- If the vehicle is unused for long periods of time

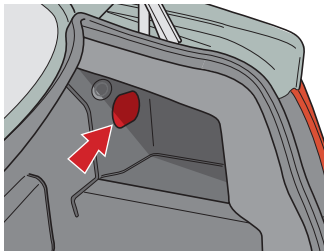
Aston Martin recommend that if this vehicle is to be left unused for ten (10) days or more the battery conditioner (mains power available) or the BDS (mains power not available) should be used.

- If the vehicle is used regularly but only for short journeys, e.g. less than 48 km (30 mile) a journey
- If electrical systems are in use without the vehicle engine running
- If the vehicle ignition key is left in the ignition for long periods of time without the engine running

Excessive battery drain would ultimately mean that the battery would not be able to start the engine.

This vehicle has two methods of maintaining battery charge at an acceptable level if the vehicle is unused for long periods of time.

- Battery Conditioner (mains power required)
- Battery Disconnect Switch (BDS)



Battery Conditioner

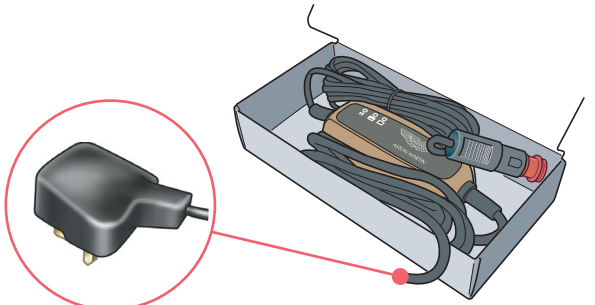
If this vehicle is not going to be used for a period of time, and **mains power is available**, use the battery conditioner to maintain the battery charge level.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not attempt to start the vehicle with the battery conditioner connected to the mains supply.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not smoke. Prevent flames and sparks. Explosive gasses are given off by batteries during charging.

For indoor use only. Disconnect mains supply before making or breaking battery connections.

Ensure the vehicle is in a secure area.

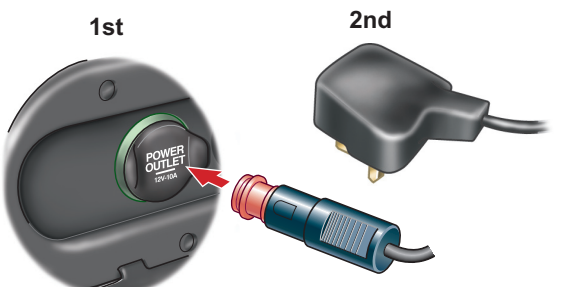


The battery conditioner supplied with the vehicle is suitable for use on all types of 12 volt lead acid batteries.

The battery conditioner is designed for conditioning of partially or fully charged batteries. It will not effectively charge a discharged battery.

When connected the battery conditioner will maintain a small trickle charge to keep the battery in a fully charged state. The battery conditioner may be left in this state indefinitely.

To Connect the Battery Conditioner



Gently close, but do not latch, the boot lid. This avoids possible damage to the boot water seal from the battery conditioner power cable.

Do not leave the vehicle keys and remote transmitter in the boot. If the boot is closed there will be no access to the contents of the boot.

With the boot left open the vehicle doors can be locked and armed (Refer to 'Leaving the Boot Open While the Vehicle is Locked', page 2.11).

To remove the battery conditioner first disconnect from the mains supply, then from the vehicle socket.

Battery Disconnect Switch (BDS)

If this vehicle is not going to be used for a period of time, and **mains power is not available**, use the Battery Disconnect Switch (BDS) to shut down all electrical systems, except:

- Clock
- Alarm functions
- Engine immobiliser (PATS)
- Door window memory
- Vehicle access, via the remote transmitter

This will allow this vehicle to remain unused for up to 70 days (approx.) without any long term damage to the battery.

For vehicles installed with the Aston Martin Tracking system this time will reduce to approx. 31 days.



Once the BDS is activated the glovebox is locked (for added security). The Owner's Guidebook will not be accessible.

To reactivate the electrical systems open the driver's door, with the vehicle key or the remote transmitter, and insert the vehicle key into the ignition barrel.

The radio preset stations will require reprogramming (Refer to 'Audio', page 8.1)

FAQ

Can the BDS be activated while driving?

No – The BDS can not be activated while the vehicle ignition is in positions 'I' and 'II'.

What if I press the BDS by accident?

In this situation you would not be able to start the vehicle. To reactivate the electrical systems insert the vehicle key into the ignition barrel.

Battery Protection Mode

Using the vehicle electrical systems, i.e. the infotainment system, with the ignition key at position 'I' (engine off) will drain the battery charge. Eventually the battery will drain to such a low level that it will not start the engine.

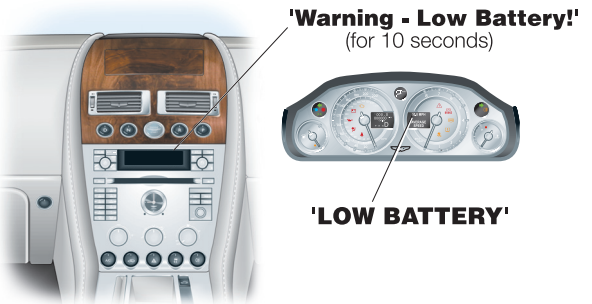
Replace the battery as soon as possible, if the battery is not capable of starting the engine.

To avoid this happening, a series of safety mechanisms shut down non-essential electrical systems before excessive battery drain takes place.

Warning messages will appear indicating the state of the battery charge.

FAQ

What is the first indication of battery protection mode?

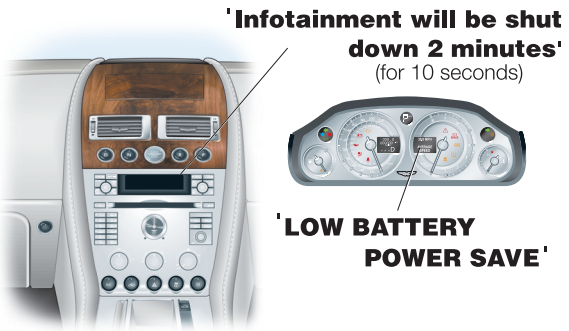


What should I do next?

Turn off all unnecessary electrical systems to reduce battery drain. Start the engine to recharge the battery. Run the engine for a reasonable length of time.

What happens if I ignore the warning messages?

After approx. two to ten minutes (dependent on the rate of battery charge drain) the following messages will appear:



If the audio is on the sound will mute for 10 seconds and a short 'Beep' will be heard when the message is first displayed.

What should I do if these messages are displayed?

Turn off all unnecessary electrical systems. Start the engine to recharge the battery. Run the engine for a reasonable length of time.

What happens if I ignore second warning messages?

The infotainment system will shut down in two minutes. No other electrical system will be shut down. This significantly reduces the rate of battery drain. The following functionality will be lost:

- CD Player
- Car Phone (option)
- Radio Tuner
- Navigation System

What should I do if the infotainment system shuts down?

Start the engine to recharge the battery. Run the engine for a reasonable length of time.

The infotainment system will not operate without the engine running until the battery has regained it's charge.

With the engine running the infotainment system will start up.

What is a reasonable length of time to run the engine?

The vehicle battery normally requires a journey of approx. 48 km (30 mile) to recharge. Additionally, use the battery conditioner to restore the vehicle battery charge.

What if I cannot restart the engine?

If the battery has been run down to a point where it will not start the engine then an external battery charger will be required or your vehicle will require a 'jump start' (Refer to 'Electrical Start From Another Vehicle', page 12.30).

Replace the battery as soon as possible, if the battery is not capable of starting the engine.

Electrical Start From Another Vehicle

(Jump Start)

Apart from vehicle recovery, this vehicle must not be driven if the vehicle battery is incapable of starting the engine. In this case the vehicle battery must be replaced.

If the voltage or earth of the donor vehicle is different or not known, do not attempt starting in the way described.

If this vehicle will not start due to a discharged battery, it may be started, **for vehicle recovery**, by connecting the battery from another vehicle (donor) to this vehicle (recipient).

⚠ Warning ⚠

The donor vehicle must have a 12 volt battery and a negative (-), black earth terminal to ensure that the correct battery polarity is maintained.

Jump Start Procedure

1. Position the vehicles so that the connecting cables will reach into the recipient engine bay. Apply the handbrake and switch off the ignition.

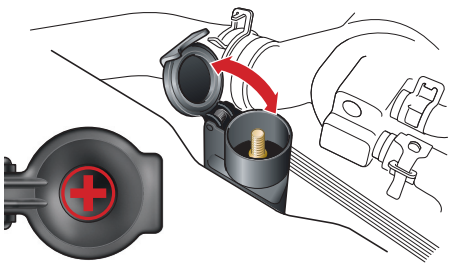
Remove rings, metal watch bands and any other jewellery.

Turn off all electrical motors and ancillaries in both vehicles.

Switch off all lamps except those needed to protect vehicles or illuminate work area.

2. Access the jump start terminal in the recipient engine bay.

3. Connect the + ve (red) cable between the '+ve' (red) terminal of the donor battery and the jump start terminal of the recipient vehicle.



4. Connect the '-ve' (black) cable between the '-ve' (black) terminal of the donor battery and a good earth (-ve) point in the recipient engine bay (i.e. alternator mounting bracket).
5. Start the donor vehicle engine and run at about 1500 – 2000 rpm.
6. Start the engine of the recipient vehicle.

Recharge time will depend on the initial 'state of health' of discharged battery.

7. Once both vehicles are running remove the jump start cables (first the '- ve' (black) cable from both vehicles and then the '+ve' (red) cable from both vehicles).

   Allow the recipient engine to run until the discharged battery is sufficiently recharged (15 to 20 minutes) to start the engine without assistance.

   Switch off and restart the recipient engine. Take the vehicle on a long run to fully charge the battery.

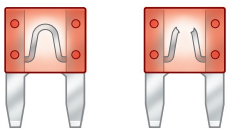
If this vehicle will not start consult your Aston Martin Dealer.

   Contact your Aston Martin Dealer to have the battery checked or replaced.

Fuses

The electrical system is protected by fuses. If any lamps, accessories, or controls don't work, inspect the appropriate circuit protector.

If a fuse has blown, the inside element will be melted. If the same fuse blows again, avoid using that system and consult your Aston Martin Dealer as soon as possible.



Normal Blown

Fusebox Location

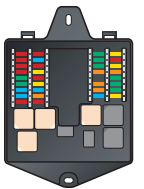
Engine Bay fuse box – Passenger Side.

Cabin fuse box – Passenger Footwell.

Boot fuse box – LH side of boot.

(Illustration – RH drive)

Engine Bay Fusebox

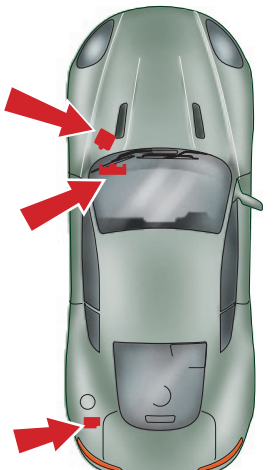


Cabin Fusebox



Boot Fusebox





Engine Bay Fuses

Fuse	Rating	Function
F1	10A	Keep alive power PCM (Bank B)
F2	10A	Aston Martin Tracking system / Clock
F3	10A	Cooling fan module
F4	20A	Engine management (PCM A)
F5	20A	Engine management (PCM B)
F6	15A	Exhaust Gas Oxygen (HEGO) sensors / Catalyst monitor sensor (CMS) (Bank B)
F7	15A	Coils 7-12 / Suppressor solenoids (Bank B)
F8	10A	Engine coolant level sensor (Bank B)
F9	20A	Injectors 7-12 / Mass air flow sensor (MAF) (Bank B)
F10	10A	A/C clutch

Engine Bay Fuses		
Fuse	**Rating**	**Function**
F11	15A	Horn
F12	10A	Keep alive power PCM (Bank A)
F13	20A	Injectors 1-6 / Mass air flow sensor (MAF) (Bank A)
F14	10A	Vapour Management valve (VMV) (Bank A)
F15	25A	Starter motor solenoid
F16	15A	Coils 1-6 / Suppressor solenoids (Bank A)
F17	5A	Glove box release solenoid
F18	15A	Exhaust Gas Oxygen (HEGO) sensors / Catalyst monitor sensor (CMS) (Bank A)
F19	30A	ABS module / Battery feed
F20	30A	ABS module / Battery feed
F21	30A	Heated front windscreen

Engine Bay Fuses		
Fuse	**Rating**	**Function**
F22	5A	Spare
F23		Blank
F24	5A	Alternator warning lamp
F25	5A	Spare
F26	20A	Headlamp wash pump
F27	25A	Spare
F28	10A	ABS module, Steering angle sensor / Ignition key reader
F29	25A	Spare
F30	5A	Battery sensing
F31	30A	Heated front windscreen
F32	30A	Wiper motor (slow)

Engine Bay Fuses		
Fuse	**Rating**	**Function**
F33	30A	Wiper motor (fast)
F34	20A	Heater Blower motor
F35	60A	Cooling fan module

Cabin Fuses		
Fuse	**Rating**	**Function**
F43	10A	Multi media module display / In-car phone (option) / GPS tuner (not Middle East) / Media player
F44	10A	Airbag module
F45	15A	Accessory socket and illumination
F46	5A	Deployable Rollbars (Volante) / Convertible roof switch (Volante) / Driver Information / Master lamp switch / Glove box relay / Master lock switch / Battery off switch
F47	5A	Interior lamps (front / footwell / rear) / Boot lamps
F48	15A	Front windscreen washer relay and pump
F49	10A	Airbag module

Cabin Fuses		
Fuse	**Rating**	**Function**
F50	5A	Spare
F51	10A	Diagnostic inputs / Centre stack switches
F52	5A	Start button
F53	10A	Headlamp levelling module / Power steering module
F54	10A	Engine fuse box, Boot fuse box
F55	20A	Spare
F56	10A	Centre console module / Sounder module / Hazard switch
F57	15A	Diagnostic connectors / Brake pedal switch
F58	10A	High beam (RH)
F59	10A	High beam (LH)
F60	15A	Drivers seat heater

Cabin Fuses		
Fuse	**Rating**	**Function**
F61	15A	Passenger seat heater
F62	20A	A/C module
F63	20A	Spare
F64	5A	AM / FM receiver module / Traffic monitoring control (TMC) receiver
F65	5A	Media play / Multi media module and display / Antenna amplifiers / Audio amplifier
F66	10A	Centre console module / Infotainment control module
F67	15A	Spare
F68	5A	Spare
F69	5A	Convertible roof module (Volante)

Cabin Fuses

Fuse	Rating	Function
F70	15A	Spare
F71		Spare
F72		Spare
F73	5A	Spare
F74	15A	Fuel pump
F75		Spare
F76		Spare
F77	15A	Boot power output
F78		Blank
F79	5A	Reversing lamps / Parking Assist module
F80	5A	Battery 'Off' switch
F81	20A	Ignition switch

Cabin Fuses

Fuse	Rating	Function
F82	25A	Passenger door module
F83	25A	Driver door module
F84	30A	Passenger seat power and switch pack
F85	30A	Driver seat power and switch pack
F86	5A	Start button / Driver and passenger seats

Cabin Stand Alone Fuses

Fuse	Rating	Function
F1	40A	Cabin Fuse box supply
F2	30A	Cabin Fuse box supply
F3		Blank
F4	40A	Cabin Fuse box supply
F5	20A	Cabin Fuse box supply

Boot Fuses

Fuse	Rating	Function
F1	5A	Convertible deck lid lock motors (Volante)
F2	20A	Spare
F3	30A	Heated rear windscreen
F4	20A	Rear quarter glass motor LH (Volante)
F5	30A	Spare
F6	20A	Rear quarter glass motor RH (Volante)
F7	5A	Battery disconnect switch (BDS) power
F8	30A	Fuel pump module (Bank B) / Aston Martin Tracking system
F9	30A	Fuel pump module (Bank A)
F10	30A	Convertible roof module (Volante)
F11	20A	Spare

Boot Fuses		
Fuse	**Rating**	**Function**
F12	20A	Transmission control module (Automatic)
F13	10A	Tyre pressure monitoring
F14	5A	Parking assist module
F15	5A	Transmission control module (Automatic)
F16	30A	Convertible roof pump (Volante)
F17	5A	Boot lamps / Boot power socket illumination
F18	30A	Audio amplifier
F19	5A	Spare
F20	10A	Canister vent valve
F21	30A	Convertible deck lid lock motors (Volante)
F22	20A	Exhaust bypass valve and vacuum pump

Bulbs

Bulb Kit

Any bulb used from the kit should be replaced at the earliest opportunity so that a full bulb kit is always available.

Specification	Type
Main beam	12V 65W (H9)
Front direction indicators	12V 27W (PY27W)
Footwell lamp	12V 5W (W5W)
Licence plate / Door lamp	12V 5W (W5W (Festoon))

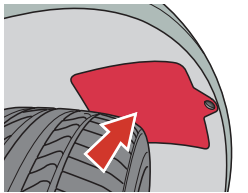
Headlamp Units: Condensation

The headlamp units will generate condensation under certain conditions. However, this should clear after approximately 10 minutes.

Headlamp Bulbs

The headlamp bulbs are accessed through an access panel in each wheel arch liner.

Turn the steering to the opposite lock from the defective bulb. Using a flat blade, i.e. a screwdriver or a small coin, release the screw on the access panel. Remove the access panel.

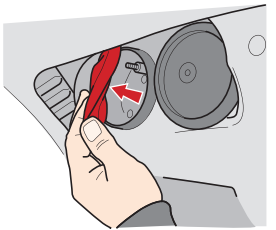


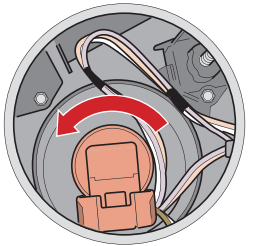
Main Beam Bulb

⚠ Warning ⚠

Handle a halogen headlamp bulb carefully and keep out of children's reach. Grasp the bulb by only its plastic base and do not touch the glass. The oil from your hand could cause the bulb to break the next time the headlamps are operated.

1. Remove the rubber cover.
2. Rotate the headlamp bulb unit a quarter turn anticlockwise. Withdraw the unit and disconnect the wiring harness plug.





3. Connect a new bulb unit, insert the new bulb unit and turn a quarter turn clockwise to lock. Install the rubber cover and access panel.

Bulb specification – (Refer to 'Bulbs', page 13.8)

Dipped Beam Bulb

High Intensity Discharge (HID) bulbs are used for dipped beam.

⚠ Warning ⚠

High Intensity Discharge (HID) bulbs produce a very high voltage. They should only be serviced by an Aston Martin Dealership.

HID systems produce a brilliant white light by establishing a high-voltage electrical arc between two electrodes within a sealed glass tube. Once the arc is established, the voltage lowers to normal operating conditions.

HID bulbs are not renewable. Refer to your Aston Martin Dealer if a HID bulb fails to operate.

Continental Driving (UK Only)

UK owners wishing to take this vehicle to the continent contact your Aston Martin Dealer for headlight and dipped beam alignment checks and adjustments.

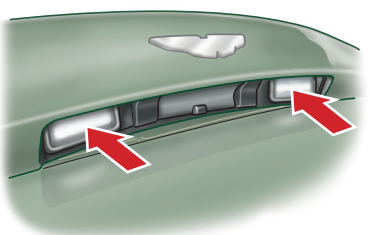
Front Indicator and Side Lamps

If a front indicator and / or a side lamp bulb fails to operate, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

Registration Plate Lamps

1. Remove the trim panel from the underside of the boot lid.
2. Twist, anticlockwise, and withdraw the bulb holder. Remove the defective bulb and replace with a new one.
3. Twist the bulb holder back into in position. Replace the boot trim panel.

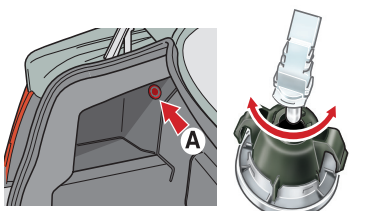
Bulb specification – (Refer to 'Bulbs', page 13.8)



Boot Lamp

1. Taking care not to damage the vehicle trim, lever out the lens unit (A).
2. Twist, anticlockwise, and remove the bulb holder. Replace the defective bulb.
3. Install the bulb holder and clip the lens unit into it's housing.

Bulb specification – (Refer to 'Bulbs', page 13.8).



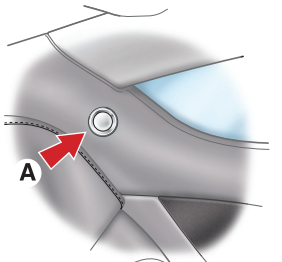
Interior Lamps

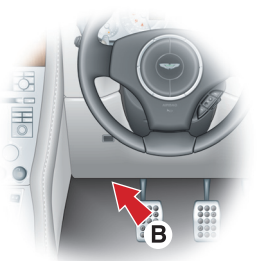
(A) Quarter panel	**(C) Door**
(B) Footwell	**(D) Map**

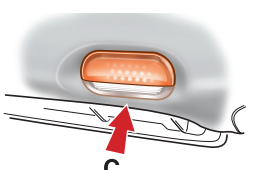
1. Taking care not to damage the vehicle trim, lever out the lens unit.
2. Replace the defective bulb.

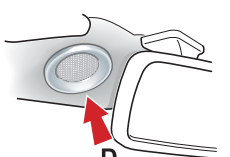
   Door lamp only: Open the access flap and replace the defective bulb
3. Press the lens unit into its housing until it clips into position.

Bulb specification – (Refer to 'Bulbs', page 13.8)









Rear Lamps

The Indicators, Stop / Tail, Reversing and Rear Fog LEDs are contained in a sealed lamp cluster unit, one either side of the vehicle. The lamp cluster is not repairable.

The high level mounted stop lamp unit consists of LEDs and is not repairable.

LEDs can last tens of thousands of hours and are resistant to heat, cold, shock and vibration.

If a rear lamp fails contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

Door Window Reset

If power to the electric windows has been interrupted for any reason, they will fail to operate correctly until reset.

1. Sit in the driver's seat. Close both doors and switch the ignition to '0'.
2. Press firmly and hold the window switch until the window is at the maximum down position. Continue to hold the button for 5 seconds then release.
3. Pull back and hold the window switch until the window is in the maximum up position. Continue to hold the switch for a further 5 seconds, then release.
4. The window is now reset. Repeat for the second window.

Bodywork and Fittings

Checks and Maintenance

Door drain holes

Check the drain holes in the bottom face of each door periodically and clear if necessary with, i.e. a short length of wire or a pipe cleaner.

Vehicle Cleaning

Paint Work

Modern water based paints are much safer and more environmentally friendly than solvent based paints. Water based paints are however more susceptible to contamination and marking by corrosive substances. The following list is not exhaustive but does indicate the most common contaminants which may adversely affect your paint work:

Other groups of contaminants may be added to this list as experience of water based paints and finishes increases.

- Bird Lime
- Tree Sap
- Insect Remains
- Antifreeze
- Oils and Greases

Wash such substances from the car using clean water at the earliest opportunity, especially in sunny weather which can accelerate contamination.

Washing

⚠ Warning ⚠

Washing and polishing agents containing silicone should not be applied to glass. This will reduce the efficiency of the windscreen wipers, causing smears which will reduce visibility, particularly during darkness and in the rain.

Using automatic car washes and power-operated mops are not recommended, since prolonged use will cause fine scratches in the paint surface.

For best results, do not wash the vehicle in strong sunlight. Allow the vehicle to cool before washing. Do not use household soaps or detergents. Do not direct hoses at full force around the door and boot seals.

When washing the vehicle use plenty of clean, cold or luke warm water. Remove dust or mud from the paint work by brushing in a gentle flow of water from a hose.

To delay the onset of corrosion developing on the brake discs Aston Martin recommend that after washing this vehicle, the vehicle should be driven a short distance to ensure that all water / washing product has dried off.

Aston Martin recommends the use of 'AUTOGLYM' car care products or preparations of similar reputable manufacture for adding to the washing water. The use of mild 'detergents' as directed by the manufacturers will also help. When dust and mud have been removed with a hose brush and water, finally dry with a chamois leather, which should be rinsed regularly in clean water.

During the winter months, it is advisable to wash the car more frequently, paying particular attention to the underside to combat the detrimental effects of any salt and sand contamination picked up from treated roads.

Polishing

Approximately twice a year, a good quality polish should be applied and then buffed, using a soft lint-free cloth.

Alloy wheel rims should be treated with a cleaner which is specifically manufactured for this purpose.

Convertible Roof Fabric (Volante)

Do not use automatic vehicle washes. Brushes, detergents and pressurised water jets may damage the roof fabric.

Do not use power washers. Jets of water may damage the weather seals and the roof fabric.

Do not use spot cleaners, chemical diluents or any organic cleaners. If in doubt, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

To maintain the appearance and condition of the convertible roof fabric the cleaning and reproof recommendations given below should be followed.

This is of particular importance in the case of light coloured roof fabrics.

Do not leave the convertible roof in the lowered (folded) position for longer than necessary. In certain circumstances permanent soiling along folds may occur.

Cleaning

Remove bird droppings as soon as possible. The organic acids in bird lime can adversely affect the convertible roof fabric.

Carefully vacuum clean the roof fabric to remove any loose particles. Gently, and evenly, wash the roof fabric using a mild soap solution and a soft brush.

A hard brush will damage the fabric fibres.

Rinse the roof fabric thoroughly with clean water to remove any traces of soap. Allow the roof fabric to completely dry before operating the roof.

Reproofs

Due to its construction the roof fabric will remain watertight without re-proofing. However to retain the appearance of the roof, to reduce soiling and to improve the drying time Aston Martin recommended that the roof is re-proofed annually, by your Aston Martin Dealer.

Upholstery, Carpets and Seats

The seats and soft trimmed components of this vehicle are covered in natural leather hide from Bridge of Weir.

In general, this natural leather upholstery requires little attention. The seats should be brushed with a soft brush from time to time and may be cleaned occasionally with a cloth damped in soap and water. **Do not** use detergents, quick cleansers or furniture polishes.

Several times a year, a leather conditioner or preservative should be used. Appropriate care materials are contained in the 'Bridge of Weir Leather Care Kit', obtainable from your Aston Martin Dealer.

⚠ Warning ⚠

Fumes from cleaning solvents may be dangerous in confined spaces. Make sure that the car is well ventilated and follow the manufacturer's printed instructions when using these products

Alcantara roof linings and other soft trimmed areas may be brushed with a soft brush. Stains from water based substances such as coffee, tea or soft drinks should be cleaned as soon as possible with mild soap and water. Please consult your Aston Martin Dealer for instructions on the removal of more difficult stains such as oil, grease or ballpoint ink.

Carpets should be cleaned regularly with a vacuum cleaner. Any stains or grease marks should be removed with a good quality solvent suitable for use on carpets.

Care and Maintenance of Seat Belts

To ensure that restraint webbings are in proper working order, regularly check the seat belts. Look for fraying, cuts, burns and similar problems. Ensure that the latches and buckles function correctly. If a seat belt is not in good condition or is not working properly, consult your Aston Martin Dealer.

Any seat belt that has been worn during a serious collision should be replaced by an Aston Martin Dealer.

Do not allow seat belts to be retracted until they are completely dry.

To clean the seat belts, use mild soap and water; do not use bleach, solvents or dyes as they can weaken the material. Allow the seat belts to dry thoroughly before use.

Under Bonnet Cleaning

Under bonnet cleaning using high pressure hoses or steam cleaners should not be carried out. The electronic control module connections and fuse boxes can be damaged by indiscriminate use of high pressure cleaning equipment.

Vehicle Storage

Recommendations

These recommendations apply to new and pre-owned cars either in Dealer or Customer ownership.

If your vehicle is not to be used for periods in excess of three months it should be stored in a dry, well ventilated building.

1. Drive your vehicle for a sufficient distance to warm the oil in the engine and the transaxle; this ensures complete lubrication of the internal components.
2. Check the engine coolant level. Top up if necessary with the correct antifreeze / water solution.
3. In order to take the weight off the tyres, raise the vehicle with a jack and place supports under the front and rear suspension.
4. If the vehicle is not raised from the ground, increase the tyre pressures to 3.4 bar (340 kpa / 50 psi). Cover the tyres to exclude any light. Rotate the wheels ¼ turn every month to avoid tyre flat spots.
5. **Volante only**.

   Close the convertible roof.

   Do not leave the convertible roof in the lowered (folded) position for longer than necessary. In certain circumstances permanent soiling along folds may occur.
6. If mains power is available, connect and switch on the battery conditioner to maintain the battery in a fully charged state. If mains power is not available, press the battery disconnect switch to reduce quiescent drain to a minimum.

7. Once a month:
    1 Disconnect the battery conditioner or connect the battery by pressing the battery reconnect switch.
    2 Start and run the engine until it is fully warmed up.
    3 Check there are no fluid leaks.
    4 Switch off the engine.
    5 Connect the battery conditioner or press the battery disconnect switch.
    6 Check and correct tyre pressures if necessary.

When returning the vehicle to normal service, set the tyre pressures to normal specification before driving on the road.

Extended Storage

For storage periods exceeding six months the following measures are recommended;

Do Not Drain Fuel System.

1. Run your vehicle until there is as small a quantity of fuel in the tank as is practical for storage purposes.
2. Add engine oil to remaining fuel in the tank to ensure a concentration of 2% (i.e. 20ml per 1 litre of fuel), then run engine for not less than ten minutes to circulate mixture thoroughly through the entire fuel system.
3. Inspect rubber connections of coolant system and have them renewed if necessary.
4. Wash bodywork of vehicle thoroughly and repair any paint blisters or patches of corrosion in order to prevent any further deterioration.

   Apply a suitable polish.
5. Clean carpets and upholstery thoroughly. Treat all leather upholstery with an application of a leather conditioner or preservative.
6. If the storage building is dry leave vehicle windows slightly open. If there is any tendency towards dampness close vehicle doors and windows and place an anti-moisture compound such as Silica desiccant bags in an open metal container inside vehicle.
7. Cover vehicle with a cotton or fabric cover.

Re-commissioning after Storage

Provided that the vehicle has been stored in accordance with the recommended procedure, the following points only should require attention before using your vehicle on the road.

1. Check the tyre pressures, inflate if necessary, lower the vehicle to ground.
2. Drain the engine sump and the final drive unit, install a new engine oil filter element, then fill the engine and the final drive unit with approved oils. Check the coolant level and, if necessary, top-up with the correct antifreeze to water solution.
3. Check all fluid levels and top-up as necessary. Fill the fuel tank.

Starting the engine without sufficient lubrication can cause serious engine damage. Ensure engine oil pressure is established before allowing the engine to start.

4. Obtain engine oil pressure:
   - 4.1 Press and hold the accelerator **hard to the floor**. This temporarily inhibits the fuel injection during cranking.
   - 4.2 Turn on the ignition.
   - 4.3 Press and hold the starter button until normal engine oil pressure is indicated on the oil pressure gauge.
   - 4.4 Release the starter button and accelerator pedal.
5. Start the engine normally and check that the oil pressure and ignition warning lamps go out as the engine starts, indicating correct oil pressure and battery charging.
6. Raise the bonnet and check for leaks of fuel, oil and coolant.
7. **Volante only**.

   Check the operation of the convertible roof and check for oil leaks.

   If the convertible roof does not operate correctly during first use, operate the roof a few times (with the engine running to keep the battery at full voltage). If the roof still does not operate correctly contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

8. Carefully test drive your vehicle and check the operation of all functions.

Braking performance can be impaired, initially, due to a fine film of corrosion on the brake disc surface. Drive conservatively and, when **safe to do so**, frequently apply the brakes until disc surfaces have been cleaned. Full braking performance should then be restored.

If in any doubt about the condition of your vehicle, have it checked by your Aston Martin Dealer.

ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

Specifications

Contents

Engine 13.2
Performance 13.2
Power and Torque Graph 13.3
Electrics 13.4
Transmission 13.4
Steering 13.5
Suspension 13.5
Brakes 13.5
Wheels 13.6
Tyres 13.7
Bulbs 13.8
Vehicle Specification 13.8
Vehicle Weights 13.8
Exterior Dimensions 13.9
Interior Dimensions 13.12
Interior Features 13.12
Exterior Features 13.13
Infotainment Centre 13.13
Fluids 13.14
Capacities 13.14

Engine

All alloy, quad overhead cam 48 valve V12	
Fuel	Recommended 98 RON Super Unleaded for optimum performance. 95 RON minimum.
Fuel Delivery System	Multi-point sequential fuel injection
Capacity	5935 cc
Firing Order	1 - 7 - 5 - 11 - 3 - 9 - 6 - 12 - 2 - 8 - 4 - 10
Idle Speed	750 rpm
Bore	89.0 mm (3.504 in)
Stroke	79.5 mm (3.13 in)
Spark Plugs	NGK – PTR6E-13
Spark Plug Gap	1.3 mm (0.05 in)± 0.1 mm (0.004 in)

Compression Ratio	10.2:1
Ignition	'Coil on Plug' ignition system
Emission control	8 Oxygen sensors (4 per exhaust branch) 2 three-way catalytic convertors (1 per exhaust branch) Evaporative loss purge
Lubrication	Wet sump pressurised lubrication

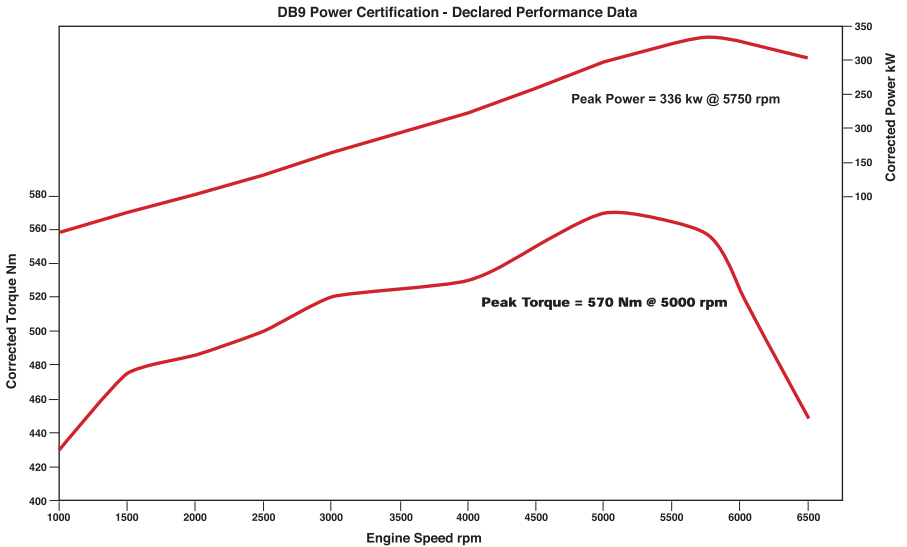
Performance

	Manual Transmission
Max Power	336 kw (450 bhp) @ 5750 rpm
Max Torque	570 Nm. (420 lb./ft.) @ 5000 rpm
Max Speed	
Coupe	300 km/h (186 m.p.h.) (where permitted)
Volante	300 km/h (186 m.p.h.) (where permitted)
0-60 m.p.h.	4.7 seconds
0-100 km/h	4.9 seconds
Max Engine Speed	7200 rpm

	Automatic Transmission
Max Power	336 kw (450 bhp) @ 5750 rpm
Max Torque	570 Nm. (420 lb./ft.) @ 5000 rpm
Max Speed	
Coupe	300 km/h (186 m.p.h.) (where permitted)
Volante	300 km/h (186 m.p.h.) (where permitted)
0-60 m.p.h.	4.9 seconds
0-100 km/h	5.1 seconds
Max Engine Speed	7200 rpm

Power and Torque Graph

82% of maximum torque is produced at only 1500 rpm.



Electrics

Alternator	Denso SC2 150 Amps
Voltage Regulation	14.4V ±0.5V @ 20°C (68°F)
Battery	Varta 90AH.

Transmission

Automatic Transmission

ZF 6HP26 six speed with 'Shift by Wire' (SBW) gear shift technology.

	1st	2nd	3rd	4th	5th	6th
Gear Ratios	4.17:1	2.34:1	1.52:1	1.14:1	0.87:1	0.69:1

Reverse
3.40:1

Manual Transmission

Graziano six speed transmission with integrated shifter bellcrank system (Cable Operated).

	1st	2nd	3rd	4th	5th	6th
Gear Ratios	3.15:1	1.97:1	1.44:1	1.15:1	0.94:1	0.76:1

Reverse
2.39:1

Final Drive

	Manual	Automatic
Ratio	3.54:1	3.15:1

Limited slip differential.

Steering

Rack and pinion, servotronic speed-sensitive power-assisted steering. Column tilt and reach adjustments.

Turns lock to lock		3.0
Turning Circle		11.5 m (37.5 ft.) (Kerb to Kerb)
Toe-In	Front	0.08° (± 0.07°) (5′ (±4′))
	Rear	0.33° (+ 0.17° / – 0.0°) (20′ (+10′ / - 0.0′))
	With the vehicle at it's design weight. Refer to your Aston Martin Dealer.	

Suspension

Front	Aluminium independent double wishbone incorporating anti-dive geometry. Coil over aluminium monotube dampers and anti-roll bar.
Rear	Aluminium independent double wishbone incorporating longitudinal control arms, coil over aluminium monotube dampers and anti-roll bar.

Brakes

Ventilated and grooved steel discs all round.

Front Discs	355 mm (14 in) diameter
Rear Discs	330 mm (13 in) diameter
Callipers	Radial-mounted four-piston monobloc.
Handbrake	Lever and cable operated independent handbrake callipers on each rear brake disc.

Anti Lock Braking System (ABS), Electronic Brakeforce Distribution (EBD), Emergency Brake Assist (EBA), Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) and Traction Control (TCS).

Wheels

⚠ Warning ⚠

Install winter wheels and tyres to both axles before the onset of severe winter weather conditions.

Standard Wheels

Front	Aston Martin aluminium alloy wheels, 8.5J x 19
Rear	Aston Martin aluminium alloy wheels, 9.5J x 19

SportPack Wheels

Front	Lightweight forged aluminium alloy wheels, 8.5J x 19"
Rear	Lightweight forged aluminium alloy wheels, 9.5J x 19"

Winter Wheels

Front	Aston Martin aluminium alloy wheels, 8 x 18
Rear	Aston Martin aluminium alloy wheels, 9 x 18

Wheel Nut Torque

Tighten every second nut until all five nuts are tightened.

Tighten all wheel nuts in two stages.



Vehicles with 22 mm Roadwheel Nuts

1. To 80 Nm. (60 lb. / ft.) in one continuous movement.
2. To 135 Nm. (100 lb. / ft.) in one continuous movement.

Vehicles with 21 mm Roadwheel Nuts

1. To 80 Nm. (60 lb. / ft.) in one continuous movement.
2. To 180 Nm. (133 lb. / ft.) in one continuous movement.

Vehicles with SportPack (Option) Titanium 21 mm Roadwheel Nuts

1. To 80 Nm. (60 lb. / ft.) in one continuous movement.
2. To 150 Nm. (113 lb. / ft.) in one continuous movement.

Tyres

⚠ Warning ⚠

Install winter wheels and tyres to both axles before the onset of severe winter weather conditions.

Tyre Loading

Tyres installed to this vehicle shall have a maximum load rating not less than 630 kg (1389 lb.) (front) and 710 kg (1565 lb.) (rear), or a load index of 92 (front) and 96 (rear) and a speed category of ZR.

The Original Equipment tyres installed to this vehicle are an approved specification, designated by 'AM9' on the sidewall.

Front	Bridgstone RE050 235/40 ZR 19
Rear	Bridgstone RE050 275/35 ZR 19

	Pressures (Cold Inflation)
Front	2.5 bar (250 kPa / 36psi)
Rear	2.6 bar (260 kPa / 38psi)

Winter Tyres

⚠ Warning ⚠

Maximum speed with winter tyres is 240 km/h (150 m.p.h.).

Front	Pirelli W240SN 225/45 R18
Rear	Pirelli W240SN 255/40 R18

	Pressures (Cold Inflation)
Front	2.5 bar (250 kPa / 36psi)
Rear	2.5 bar (250 kPa / 36psi)

Snow chains may only be installed to the driven (rear) road wheels. Consult your Aston Martin Dealer.

Bulbs

	Rating	Type
Headlamp dipped beam	35W	D1S HID
Headlamp main beam	65W	H9
Front Indicator lamps	27W	PY27W
Parking lamp / Footwell lamps	5W	W5W
Door lamps	5W	C5W
Side Repeater	5W	WY5W
Rear quarter lamps / Boot lamp / Reading lamps	3W	W3W
High Mounted Stop Lamp		LED
Number plate lamps	5W	W5W

The rear lamp cluster is a sealed unit. If any rear cluster lamp fails to operate contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

Vehicle Specification

Body

- Two door Coupe / 2+2 seating
- Two door Volante / 2+2 seating

Extruded aluminium bonded body structure with aluminium and composite body panels. Extruded aluminium door side impact beams.

Towing

This vehicle is not engineered to tow any form of caravan, boat or trailer.

No towing devices are approved for installing to this vehicle, other than a front towing eye to aid recovery or loading of this vehicle onto a transporter.

Vehicle Weights

Kerb Weight

	Manual	Automatic
Coupe	1760 kg (3880 lb.)	1800 kg (3970 lb.)
Volante	1815 kg (4000 lb.)	1855 kg (4090 lb.)

Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)

	Manual	Automatic
Coupe	2060 kgs (4540 lb.)	2100 kg (4630 lb.)
Volante	2115 kgs (4665 lb.)	2155 kg (4750 lb.)

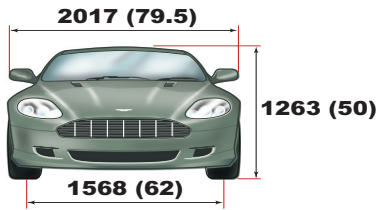
Boot Maximum Load

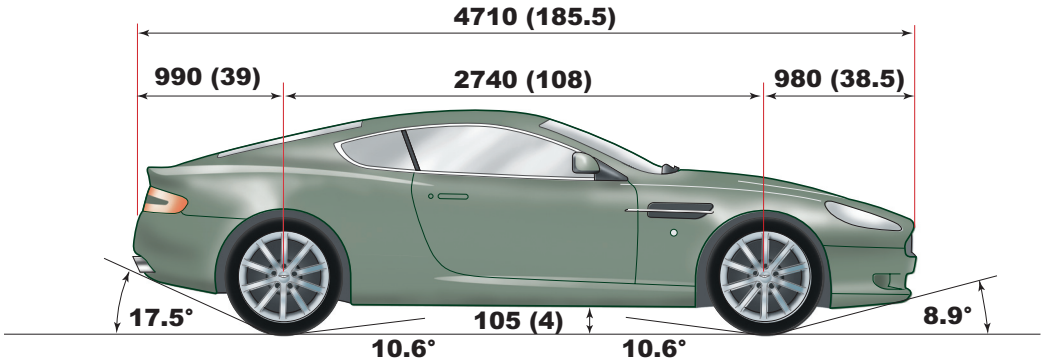
40 kg (88 lb.) evenly distributed

Exterior Dimensions

Coupe

mm (inch)

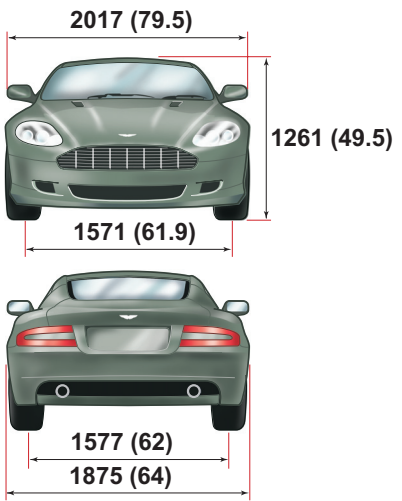


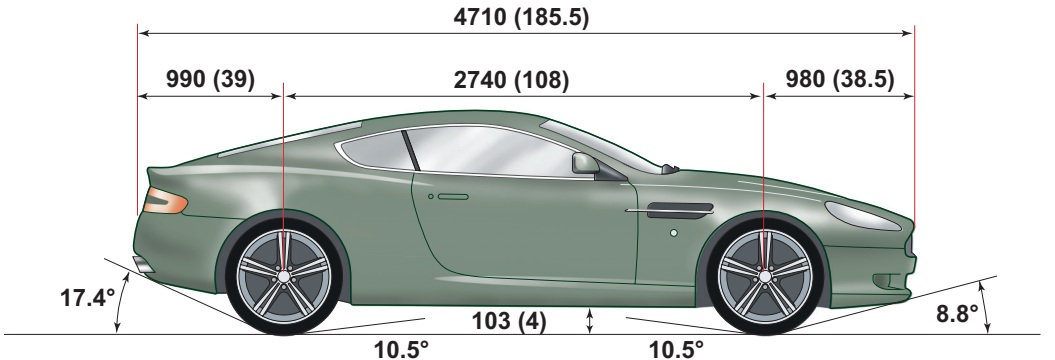


Ride height is measured at GVW.

Coupe SportPack

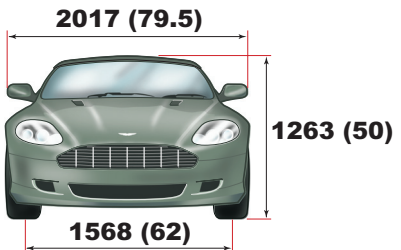
mm (inch)





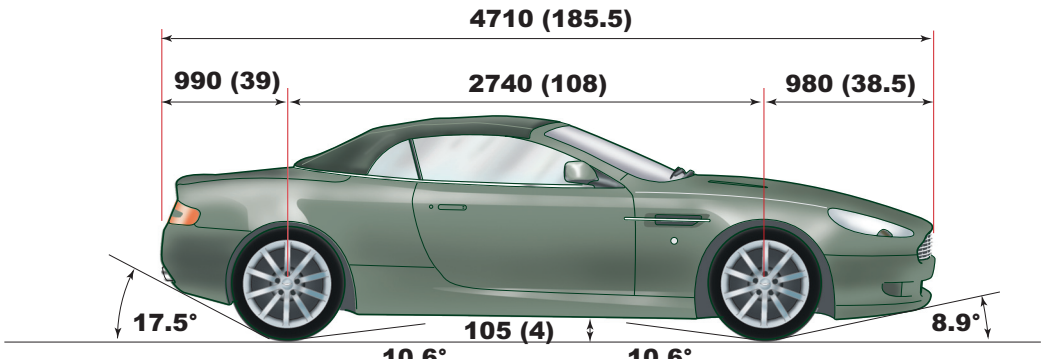
Ride height is measured at GVW.

Volante



mm (inch)

The minimum headroom required to open or close the convertible roof is 1531mm (60 in).



Ride height is measured at GVW.

Interior Dimensions

Effective Headroom		
Coupe	Front	932 mm (36.7 in)
	Rear	796 mm (31.3 in)
Volante	Front	921 mm (36.3 in)
	Rear	800 mm (31.5 in)
Shoulder Room	Front	1392 mm (54.8 in)
	Rear	1200 mm (47.2 in)
Hip Room	Front	1410 mm (55.5 in)
	Rear	1242 mm (48.9 in)
Effective Legroom	Front	1086 mm (43 in)
	Rear	695 mm (27.4 in)
Boot Volume		
Coupe		186 ltr (6.6 cu. ft.)
Volante		138 ltr (4.8 cu. ft.)

Interior Features

- Hand-crafted Bridge of Weir leather trim
- Walnut facia veneer (alternative options)
- Polished aluminium and painted alloy details
- Air-conditioning
- Alarm system interacting with the central locking system and PATS immobiliser system
- Driver and front passenger dual-stage airbags and front occupant side airbags
- Ten-direction electrically adjusted front seats (including height adjustment)
- Position memory front seats (including door rear view mirrors)
- Heated front seats (two heat levels)
- Organic electroluminescent (OEL) displays

Exterior Features

- Door mirrors
  - Heated, electrically adjusted
  - Position memory system
  - Powerfold system
  - Auto fold system
  - Reverse dip system
- Electrically operated door windows
- Heated rear windscreen
- Heated front windscreen (option)
- Reversing Sensors

Infotainment Centre

- Three levels of audio system with radio and 6 CD autochanger
  - Linn 128W Audio System (standard)
  - Linn 260W Audio System with Limbik 5.1 (option)
  - Linn 950W Audio System with Dolby Pro Logic II (option)
- Satellite Navigation system (Not available in all markets)
- In-car telephone (option)
- Menus for Audio, In-car telephone (option), Satellite Navigation system (Not available in all markets), Vehicle Security

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

Fluids

Engine oil Mobil 1 Recommended (0W-40)

However, if this oil is unavailable, alternatively a fully synthetic 0w-40 oil meeting the specifications detailed below can be used. No other viscosity grades or specifications are acceptable.

Authority	Standard
API	SL / SJ / EC / CF
ACEA	A3 / B3 / B4
ILSAC	GF3

To achieve the required high performance of synthetic lubricants, do not mix with mineral oils.

Engine coolant 50% water, 50% Havoline OAT

Do not mix OAT anti-freeze with glycol based antifreeze.

Automatic transmission fluid	Shell ATFM 1375-4
Automatic transmission final drive oil	Shell 'Transaxle' oil 75W/90
Manual gearbox oil / Final drive	Shell 'Transaxle' oil 75W/90
Brake / Clutch fluid	Castrol Super Response Dot 4
Power steering fluid	Texaco Cold Climate
A/C refrigerant	HFC134A.

Capacities

	Litres (Gallons (UK))
Engine sump (incl. filter)	10 (2.2)
Engine cooling system	15 (3.3)
Screen washer reservoir	6.9 (1.5)
Power Steering reservoir	1.3 (0.3)
Automatic Gearbox / Cooler	9.7 (2.2)
Automatic final drive / Cooler	1.6 (0.4)
Manual Gearbox / Final drive & Cooler	5.0 (1.03)
Fuel Tank	80 (17.6)

Approx. 78 litres (17.2 UK Gallons) usable.

Service

Contents

Pre-delivery Inspection A.2
Service Periods A.4
Service Record A.9
Anti Corrosion Inspection A.13
Replacement of Airbag Units A.16
Replacement of Seat Belt Pre-tensioners A.16
Field Service Actions A.17
Service Action Recalls A.18

Pre-delivery Inspection

This free series of checks is carried out on the vehicle by the selling dealer before delivery. The checks ensure that you receive a vehicle which matches the high quality standards set by Aston Martin Limited.

Ensure that the entry is stamped and signed as completed.

The following checks will be made:

(1) Levels and Leaks

- Engine oil.
- Power steering oil.
- Brake / Clutch fluid.
- Engine coolant level.
- Engine coolant specific gravity.
- Windscreen washer fluid.
- Fuel system.
- Transaxle (leak check only).
- Battery.

(2) Mechanical Functions

- Gear selection (manual).
- Clutch operation (manual).
- Throttle pedal operation.
- Handbrake operation.
- Steering column adjustment and lock operation.
- Seat adjuster rails.
- Bonnet release and catch.
- Door operation and locks.
- Storage compartments.
- Rear view mirror.
- Boot release and catch.

(3) Electrical Checks

- Battery condition.
- Auto transmission gear selection functions.
- Heated front (option) & rear screen(s).
- Windscreen washers.
- Windscreen wipers.
- A/C controls.
- Infotainment centre operation (Audio, Sat Nav and In-car Phone (option).
- All speakers.
- Reversing lamps.
- Number plate lamps.
- Side and headlamps.

(3) Electrical Checks

- Brake lamps
- Hazard warning lamps.
- Instrument illumination and dimmer.
- Gauges / warning lamps.
- Centre stack controls.
- Centre console controls.
- Horns.
- Reset clock (if necessary).
- Rear fog lamps.
- Blower motor.
- Seat belt warning system.
- Security system / Remote transmitter.
- Interior lamps.
- Cigar lighter (option).
- All seat functions.
- Door window mechanisms.
- Door / Boot courtesy lamps.
- Central locking system.
- Filler flap lock operation.
- Door mirror adjustments.
- Clutch pedal start inhibit (Manual).
- Brake pedal start inhibit (Automatic).
- Interrogate DTC codes.
- Record battery open-circuit voltage.

(4) Wheels and Tyres

- Install locking road wheel nuts (option).
- Check road wheel nuts torque.
- Tyre pressures.
- Tyre orientation.
- Check colour coded valve collars (tyre pressure monitoring)

(5) Road Test

- Engine.
- Clutch (Manual).
- Transaxle.
- Steering.
- Brakes.
- Wheel balance.
- Dampers.
- Exhaust by-pass system.
- Gear shift operation in all modes.
- Noise, vibration or harshness.
- A/C performance.
- Instruments operation.
- Seat belt and buckle operation.
- Steering wheel alignment.
- Traction control / DSC.
- ABS operation.

(6) Final Checks

- Drive belt tensioner operation.
- Fuel / brake pipe security.
- Fuel / fluid leaks.
- Security of cooling hoses.
- Exhaust catalyst security.

(7) Hand-over Preparation

- Check function of all keys, locks and remote transmitter.
- Clean bodywork / road wheel arch liners. Inspect / rectify.
- Clean off all transit labels.
- Valet Vehicle.
- De-grease windscreen.
- Install carpets.
- Remove interior protection.
- Check Owner's Guide.
- Check tools.
- Install Number plates.
- Tyre sealant system.
- Towing eye.

Odometer:

Applicable Service Actions checked:	YES	NO
Open Service Actions completed:	YES	NO

Dealer Stamp

Free

Pre-delivery Inspection

Signature..... Date.....

Service Periods

Apart from the initial 1,500 km / 1,000 mile / 3 month service, which ever occurs first, vehicle servicing is every 16,000 km / 10,000 mile / 12 month, which ever occurs first.

1,500 km / 1000 mile / 3 month (Free)

16,000 km / 10,000 mile / 12 month

32,000 km / 20,000 mile / 24 month

48,000 km / 30,000 mile / 36 month

Which ever occurs first.

12 Month To maintain the hydraulic brake system performance, the brake fluid is renewed every 12 month to clear the system of absorbed water vapour.

Initial 1,500 km / 1,000 mile / 3 Month Service (Free)

The selling dealer is responsible for the costs and work involved in performing this free service. The initial service consists of an inspection and oil change service after completion of the first 1,500 km / 1,000 mile / 3 month and includes fine adjustments to compensate for initial 'bedding-in' e.g. handbrake adjustment.

Also, engine oil and filter will be changed to clear any contaminants picked up during the initial running.

The following service schedules are recommended for this vehicle. The schedules may be modified if necessary. Please consult your Aston Martin Dealer for details of any service schedule updates.

1000mls 1500km 3 month	10000mls 16000km 12 month	20000mls 32000km 24 month	
Pre-Maintenance			
x	x	x	Pre-Maintenance Road Test Evaluation
x	x	x	Install vehicle protection kit and wing covers
x	x	x	Check Bulletins / Field Service Actions / Recall status

1000mls 1500km 3 month	10000mls 16000km 12 month	20000mls 32000km 24 month	
Fluids, Filters and Leaks Checks			
x	x	x	Renew engine oil
x	x	x	Renew engine oil filter
x	x	x	Check for engine oil leaks
-	-	x	Renew air cleaner elements
x	x	-	Check manual transaxle for leaks. Top up if required
32,000 km / 20,000 mile / Every 3 Years	96,000 km / 60,000 mile / Every 6 Years	160,000 km / 100,000 mile / Every 10 Years	Check / Top up manual transaxle oil level
Every 64,000 km / 40,000 mile / 4 Years			Renew manual transaxle oil. Clean filter
x	x	x	Check auto gearbox for leaks / top up if required
x	-	-	Check differential for leaks, top up if required (automatic)
-	-	x	Renew differential oil and clean the filter (automatic)

1000mls 1500km 3 month	10000mls 16000km 12 month	20000mls 32000km 24 month	
Every 160,000 km / 100,000 mile / 5 Years			Renew engine coolant - check concentration
x	x	x	Check / top-up engine coolant
x	x	x	Check cooling and heating systems for leaks
x	x	x	Check for fuel leaks
12 Month			Renew brake / clutch fluid
x	x	x	Check / top-up brake / clutch fluid reservoir
x	x	x	Check / top-up power steering reservoir
x	x	x	Check power steering system for leaks
x	x	x	Check brake hoses, pipes and unions for leaks
x	x	x	Check suspension dampers for leaks
x	x	x	Top-up windscreen / headlamp washer reservoir
x	x	x	Check exhaust system for leaks
x	x	x	Check operation of exhaust by-pass valves
x	x	x	Check A/C system for leaks
-	-	x	Renew pollen filter

1000mls 1500km 3 month	10000mls 16000km 12 month	20000mls 32000km 24 month	
Mechanical Function Checks			
-	x	x	Lubricate all door locks and hinges
-	x	x	Lubricate bonnet secondary catch
-	x	x	Check security of the bonnet catch. Check that the bonnet secondary catch moves freely over its whole travel and returns smartly under spring pressure.
x	x	x	Check / adjust drive belt tension, renew if necessary
x	x	x	Adjust handbrake cables, if required
x	x	x	Check handbrake security
x	x	x	Check condition of handbrake pads
x	x	x	Inspect brake pad wear and condition of discs and callipers. Replace brake pads and wear warning leads if 60% worn
-	x	-	Check wiper blade inserts. Renew if necessary
-	-	x	Renew wiper blades
-	x	x	Inspect coolant radiator and A/C condenser. Clean if required
x	x	x	Check condition and operation of all seat belts
x	x	x	Check security of exhaust system mountings and heat shields

1000mls 1500km 3 month	10000mls 16000km 12 month	20000mls 32000km 24 month	
x	x	x	Check brake hoses, pipes and unions
x	x	x	Check power steering pipes and unions for corrosion and mechanical defects
x	x	x	Check security and condition of fuel hoses
x	x	x	Check cooling system hoses security and condition
x	x	x	Check A/C hoses security and condition
x	x	x	Check condition and security of steering unit joints and gaiters
x	x	x	Check security and condition of suspension ball joints, gaiters and bushes
x	x	x	Check security and condition of suspension fixings
-	-	x	Check tightness of driveshaft bolts
x	x	x	Check interior rear view mirror for security and function
-	-	x	Check the condition of wheel arch liners
Every 64,000 km / 40,000 mile / 4 Years			Clean throttle butterflies

1000mls 1500km 3 month	10000mls 16000km 12 month	20000mls 32000km 24 month	
Electrical Function Checks			
x	x	x	Check DTC's. Rectify faults if required
112,000 km / 70,000 mile			Renew spark plugs
x	x	x	Check / record battery voltage
x	x	x	Clean and grease battery connections
x	-	x	Check and if necessary adjust headlamp alignment
x	x	x	Check operation of all lamps
x	x	x	Check operation of ABS warning lamp
x	x	x	Check operation of all warning indicators
x	x	x	Check audible warnings including security system
x	x	x	Check operation of the horns
x	x	x	Check operation of the windscreen wipers
x	x	x	Check exterior rear view mirrors for security and function
x	x	x	Check service interval indicator. Reset
x	x	x	Check / operate battery disconnect switch
x	x	x	Check / operate battery connect switch

1000mls 1500km 3 month	10000mls 16000km 12 month	20000mls 32000km 24 month	
x	x	x	Check / operate electric windows
x	x	x	Check / operate powerfold mirrors
x	x	x	Check windscreen washers and jets
Wheels and Tyre Checks			
x	x	x	Check for correct tyre size, type and orientation
x	x	x	Check colour coded valve collars for correct location (tyre pressure monitoring)
x	x	x	Check and report tyre tread depth
x	x	x	Check tyres for uneven / excessive wear or damage
x	x	x	Check / adjust tyre pressures
x	x	x	Check torque of road wheel nuts
x	x	x	Check road wheel rims for inner and outer damage.
x	x	x	Check operation of tyre pressure sensors
x	x	x	Check 'use by' date of tyre repair kit

1000mls 1500km 3 month	10000mls 16000km 12 month	20000mls 32000km 24 month	
Anti Corrosion Check			
-	x	x	Check body panels and underbody for corrosion starting from the inside - out (excluding stone chips).
Gear Change Modes (Automatic)			
x	x	x	Auto
x	x	x	Sport
x	x	x	Touchtronic
x	x	x	Reverse

1000mls 1500km 3 month	10000mls 16000km 12 month	20000mls 32000km 24 month	
Final Checks			
x	x	x	Degrease windscreen
x	x	x	Carry out road test - including operation of all auto gearbox modes
x	x	x	Check ABS and Traction Control operation
x	x	x	Check operation of all seat belts and buckles
x	x	x	Check that fuel filler bowl rain drain is clear

Service Record

The following service records cover the Initial 1,500 km / 1,000 mile / 3 month service and then the regular services at 16,000 km / 10,000 mile / 12 month, which ever occurs first, intervals. Ensure that at each service the appropriate entry is stamped and signed as completed.

Vehicle Identification Number:

Date of Delivery:

If the initial free 1,500 km / 1,000 mile / 3 month service is carried out by an Aston Martin Dealer other than the selling Dealer - Ensure that the tear off sheet is completed and returned to the selling Dealer with the invoice.

Odometer:

YES NO

Applicable Service Actions checked:

YES NO

Open Service Actions completed:

Dealer Stamp

Free

Initial 1,500 km / 1,000 mile / 3 Month Service

Signature..... Date.....

Return Slip

Odometer:

YES NO

Applicable Service Actions checked:

YES NO

Open Service Actions completed:

Dealer Stamp

Initial 1,500 km / 1,000 mile / 3 Month Service

Signature..... Date.....

VIN:

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

Odometer:		
Applicable Service Actions checked:	YES	NO
Open Service Actions completed:	YES	NO

Dealer Stamp

16,000 km / 10,000 mile / 12 month

Signature..... Date.....

Odometer:		
Applicable Service Actions checked:	YES	NO
Open Service Actions completed:	YES	NO

Dealer Stamp

32,000 km / 20,000 mile / 24 month

Signature..... Date.....

Odometer:

Applicable Service Actions checked: YES NO

Open Service Actions completed: YES NO

Dealer Stamp

48,000 km / 30,000 mile / 3rd year

Signature..... Date.....

Odometer:

Applicable Service Actions checked: YES NO

Open Service Actions completed: YES NO

Dealer Stamp

64,000 km / 40,000 mile / 4th year

Signature..... Date.....

Odometer:

Applicable Service Actions checked: YES NO

Open Service Actions completed: YES NO

Dealer Stamp

80,000 km / 50,000 mile / 5th year

Signature..... Date.....

Odometer:		
Applicable Service Actions checked	YES	NO
Open Service Actions completed	YES	NO

Dealer Stamp

97,000 km / 60,000 mile / 6th year

Signature..... Date.....

Odometer:		
Applicable Service Actions checked	YES	NO
Open Service Actions completed	YES	NO

Dealer Stamp

113,000 km / 70,000 mile / 7th year

Signature..... Date.....

Odometer:		
Applicable Service Actions checked	YES	NO
Open Service Actions completed	YES	NO

Dealer Stamp

129,000 km / 80,000 mile / 8th year

Signature..... Date.....

Anti Corrosion Inspection

Date:

Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

Anti Corrosion Inspection 12 Month

Signature..... Date.....

Date:

Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

Anti Corrosion Inspection 2nd Year

Signature..... Date.....

Date:

Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

Anti Corrosion Inspection 3rd Year

Signature..... Date.....

Date:

Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

Anti Corrosion Inspection
4th Year

Signature..... Date.....

Date:

Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

Anti Corrosion Inspection
5th Year

Signature..... Date.....

Date:

Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

Anti Corrosion Inspection
6th Year

Signature..... Date.....

Date:

Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

Anti Corrosion Inspection
7th Year

Signature..... Date.....

Date:

Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

Anti Corrosion Inspection
8th Year

Signature..... Date.....

Date:

Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

Anti Corrosion Inspection
9th Year

Signature..... Date.....

Date:

Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

Anti Corrosion Inspection
10th Year

Signature..... Date.....

Replacement of Airbag Units

Every 10 years from the date of vehicle registration, all airbag units must be replaced. To ensure this is completed correctly and safely, this work should be carried out by your Aston Martin Dealership.

Date:

Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

Airbag Replacement
10 Year

Signature..... Date.....

Replacement of Seat Belt Pre-tensioners

Every 10 years from the date of vehicle registration, all seat belt pre-tensioners must be replaced. To ensure this is completed correctly and safely, this work should be carried out by your Aston Martin Dealership.

Date:

Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

Seat Belt Pre-Tensioners
Replacement
10 Year

Signature..... Date.....

Field Service Actions

Action No.	Date	Dealer

Action No.	Date	Dealer

Action No.	Date	Dealer

Service Action Recalls

Recall No.	Date	Dealer

ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN

Assistance

Contents

European Emergency Service B.2
What To Do In An Emergency..... B.2
Vehicle Identification and Location B.2
Emergency Telephone Numbers..... B.3
European Emergency Service B.4
Where you are Covered B.4
Benefits B.5
European Autoroute Restrictions..... B.6
What is not Covered B.7

European Emergency Service

As the owner of an Aston Martin vehicle you should enjoy a high standard of trouble free motoring. Should the unexpected occur however, our worldwide dealer network is there to help you. Details and contact telephone numbers are shown in the Dealer Directory.

In the UK and Europe, a special additional emergency service has been designed to provide you and your passengers with the help you need quickly and efficiently.

Your Aston Martin European Emergency Service policy documents specify the cover available which may include:

- Roadside Recovery
- Car Hire
- Home Assistance
- Vehicle Repatriation
- Vehicle Recovery
- Parts Delivery
- Garage Storage
- Customs Duty
- Hotel Accommodation
- Get You Home Costs

What To Do In An Emergency

Should assistance be required in the unlikely event of vehicle immobilisation, simply contact Aston Martin European Emergency Service using the relevant emergency telephone number from the following list. For countries not listed, use either of the U.K. numbers.

Immobilisation is defined as:

Mechanical or electrical breakdown, road traffic accident, vehicle fire or theft, loss of keys, punctures or running out of fuel.

Vehicle Identification and Location

To minimise delay, please have the following information available:

- Your name
- Aston Martin model
- The vehicle identification number (i.e. The last six digits from the VIN number label in the corner of the windscreen)
- The location of the vehicle
- Vehicle registration number and colour
- Telephone number where you can be contacted
- Description of the concern experienced

Emergency Telephone Numbers

Please call your toll-free country number when requiring assistance within your own country.

When outside you own country, call the normal toll line for assistance in your own language.

In the event of requiring emergency service, it may be beneficial to have the relevant telephone numbers entered into your telephone 'phone book'.

Toll Free Lines

For assistance when inside your Country of Residence

Normal Country of Residence	Number
U.K.	0800 777 160
Germany	0800 88 99 777
France	0800 108 000
Spain	0900 152 337
Italy	0800 017 944
Belgium	0800 14 524
Netherlands	0800 27866007
Switzerland	0800 278 666
Austria	0800 223200

Toll Lines

For assistance in your own language when outside your Country of Residence

Normal Country of Residence	Number
U.K.	00 44 208 603 9875
Germany	00 49 611 7320 304
France	00 33 1 49 93 81 68
Spain	00 34 91 452 29 42
Italy	00 39 02 26609 857
Belgium	00 32 2 773 62 66
Netherlands	00 31 20 851 2269
Switzerland	00 41 1 283 35 86
Austria	00 43 1 525 03 6568

European Emergency Service

The Aston Martin European Emergency Service is manned by multilingual staff 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. By telephoning our personnel, all arrangements will be made on your behalf, within the terms of the assistance programme.

Please do not make your own arrangements, then expect Aston Martin European Emergency Assistance to reimburse you, this is not the role of the Emergency Service.

Where you are Covered

- If you are a permanent resident in Continental Europe, you are covered in the countries as defined below
- If you move permanently to another country within Continental Europe during your period of cover, your entitlements remain the same. Ensure you notify your Aston Martin Dealer
- Should you move permanently outside the area defined as Continental Europe, your cover will expire after 30 days

Continental Europe is defined as:

Andorra, Austria, Belgium, Bulgaria, Croatia, Czech Republic, Denmark, Finland, France, Germany, Gibraltar, Greece, Hungary, Italy, Liechtenstein, Luxembourg, Monaco, Netherlands, Norway, Poland, Portugal (not Madeira), Republic of Ireland, Romania, San Marino, Slovakia, Slovenia, Spain (including the Balearic Islands and Canary Islands), Sweden, Switzerland, Turkey (European part), and Vatican City.

The United Kingdom is defined as England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland.

Benefits

Roadside Recovery and Home Assistance

In the event of vehicle immobilisation Aston Martin European Emergency Service will organise and pay for the costs of taking your Aston Martin to the nearest Aston Martin Dealership, should assistance at home or at the roadside prove unsuccessful.

Vehicle Recovery

In the event of vehicle immobilisation where your vehicle cannot be repaired within 4 working days, Aston Martin European Emergency Service will repatriate your Aston Martin to the Aston Martin Dealership nearest your planned destination or home address.

Vehicle Collection After Repair

Following repairs organised by Aston Martin European Emergency Service, the cost of a first class rail ticket or (if rail transport would normally exceed 6 hours) a business class air ticket will be met to permit you or a person you designate to collect the repaired vehicle.

Get You Home/Hotel Accommodation

Should your Aston Martin not be repaired the same day, Aston Martin European Emergency Service will organise and pay for the following:

1. First class rail transport, or, if rail transport would normally exceed 6 hours, scheduled business class air transport to enable you and your passengers to return to your homes in the country of vehicle registration or to continue your original journey.
2. A contribution towards hotel accommodation from the first day of immobilisation. The maximum payable will be £100 per person per day up to 2 days for hotel accommodation in the country of vehicle registration or up to 7 days hotel accommodation elsewhere in Continental Europe.

Car Hire

If, despite Roadside or Home Assistance, your Aston Martin cannot be repaired the same day, Aston Martin European Emergency Service will contribute towards the costs of a temporary replacement vehicle during the time your vehicle remains immobilised.

The maximum payment under this section is £200 with a limit of £100 per day in the country of registration or £400 with a limit of £100 per day elsewhere in Continental Europe. You will be required to satisfy the requirements of the vehicle hiring company.

These requirements may include:

- Production of your current valid driving license
- Taking up Collision Damage Waver (CDW) insurance, or taking up the hire vehicle liability on your own insurance, as required by the hirer
- Returning the loan car to the supplier with a full tank of fuel or paying to have the fuel tank replenished by the hirer

European Autoroute Restrictions

If assistance is required on a French Autoroute or on certain Autoroutes in other European countries, you must use the official SOS boxes at the side of the road in order to arrange initial assistance or recovery. You will be connected to the authorised Autoroute Assistance Service because these roads are privatised. Neither Aston Martin European Emergency Service or any other assistance organisation are allowed to assist on these roads.

Once your Aston Martin has been recovered from the Autoroute, you should contact Aston Martin European Emergency Service at the earliest opportunity to ensure that any further assistance arrangements you require can be made on your behalf.

Aston Martin European Emergency Service will advise you how to reclaim costs incurred for recovery from the Autoroute.

What is not Covered

Aston Martin European Emergency Service is thorough and comprehensive, however, claims cannot be met as a result of any of the following:

1. Where you, or anyone else acting on your behalf, make repair or service arrangements without authorisation (and a file number) from Aston Martin European Emergency Service.
2. Where loss, injury, damage, illness, death or legal liability have been caused by the following:
   - Your property being held, taken or destroyed or damaged under the order of any government or customs officials
   - Ionising radiation or radioactive contamination from nuclear fuel or nuclear waste or any risk from nuclear equipment
   - The radioactive toxic explosive or other hazardous properties of any explosive nuclear assembly or nuclear component thereof
3. Loss, destruction or damage directly occasioned by pressure waves caused by aircraft and other aerial devices travelling at sonic or supersonic speeds.
4. Motor racing rallies, speed or duration tests or practice thereof.
5. Damage or injury intentionally caused by you or resulting from your participation in a criminal offence.
6. Loss, damage (directly or indirectly) occasioned by, or happening through or in consequence of war, invasion, acts of foreign enemies, hostilities (whether war be declared or not), civil war, rebellion, revolution, insurrection, military or usurped power, riot or civil commotion.
7. Your Aston Martin being kept in an un-roadworthy condition or not being serviced in accordance with the Manufacturer's recommendations.
8. Any costs that would have been payable by you, such as petrol or toll charges.

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

Warranty

Contents

Vehicle Warranty C.2
Corrosion Protection Warranty C.2
Period of Cover C.2
Who May Repair the Vehicle C.3
Wear and Tear Items C.3
What is Not Covered C.4
Customer Responsibility C.5
Warranty Coverage when Touring C.6
Extra Cover Warranties C.6
Consumer Law C.7
Owner Details C.8
Owner Warranty Transfer C.9

Vehicle Warranty

Aston Martin gives a Warranty for each new Aston Martin motorcar and each replacement car or assembly manufactured or supplied by the Company to be free from defects in material and workmanship under normal use and service for the applicable Warranty period.

Tyres are covered separately by the tyre manufacturer. Dealers are expected to offer assistance to the customer in pursuing a claim against the tyre manufacturer.

Corrosion Protection Warranty

The vehicles bodywork is protected by an Anti-Perforation Corrosion Warranty. Should any part of the bodywork of the Aston Martin motorcar be perforated by rust corrosion, the panel(s) affected by the perforation will be repaired or replaced.

The term 'perforation' means a hole that is caused by corrosion that penetrates through a body panel from the inside.

Period of Cover

The period of cover for all types of warranty commences on the day the vehicle is handed over to the first retail customer.

The Vehicle Warranty period of cover is three years / unlimited mileage.

The Vehicle Corrosion Protection Warranty period of cover is 10 years / unlimited mileage.

Who May Repair the Vehicle

Franchise holders and / or Approved Repairers, who are appointed and receive full technical support from Aston Martin, provide facilities for the servicing and repair of Aston Martin motorcars. Only such Franchise Holders or Approved Repairs will under the terms of this warranty, repair replace or readjust, free of charge to the owner, any part or assemble proved to Aston Martins satisfaction to show a defect in materials or workmanship within the applicable period.

Wear and Tear Items

Items that are subject to wear and tear are generally divided into two categories, namely those specified for replacement or adjustment during scheduled maintenance and those that require replacement or adjustment dependent upon conditions of use.

Scheduled Maintenance Items

The items listed below are covered by the Vehicle Warranty up to the first scheduled change point that replacement or adjustment is required during scheduled maintenance operations.

- Drive Belts
- Spark Plugs
- Oil, air, pollen and fuel filters

The period of warranty cover for any item may not exceed the time and distance limitation of the vehicle warranty.

Wear and Tear Items

The items listed below are recognised as having a limited service life or are subject to wear or damage. However, these items are covered by the vehicle warranty for up to one year or the first service, which ever occurs first.

- Wiper Blades
- All Light bulbs

Xenon headlamp bulbs and instrumentation illumination bulbs are covered by the full vehicle warranty.

- Wheel alignment / balancing

- Adjustments, including but not limited to: headlamp and hinged panel adjustments, suspension tightening, steering geometry adjustments, emission / fuel systems checks and handbrake cable adjustments
- Remote handset batteries

Brake pads, brake discs and other friction related components are not covered when replacement is due to wear and tear, but they are covered against manufacturing defects for the duration of the Vehicle Warranty.

Consumables

Replacement or 'top-up' of consumable fluids, e.g. oils, antifreeze, brake fluid, windscreen wash solution and refrigerant, is only covered when they are used as part of a warranty repair.

What is Not Covered

Vehicle Warranty

Aston Martin is **not** responsible for any repair or replacement that is required as a direct result of:

- Normal wear and tear
- Failure to properly maintain the vehicle in accordance with Aston Martin's maintenance schedules and service instructions
- Failure to use Aston Martin specified parts or fluids during a warranty repair (or parts of equivalent quality during a retail repair)
- Damage resulting from neglect, accident, flooding or improper use
- Any modification of the vehicle or parts which is not authorised by Aston Martin, including any engine performance enhancement modifications
- Refilling or topping-up with incorrect fuel, e.g. diesel instead of petrol
- Use of bio-ethanol alternative fuels
- Defects caused as a result of the vehicle being used in motorsport or track events or for any other purpose other than normal private or commercial use
- Any vehicle that has had its vehicle identification number altered or removed, or on which the odometer reading has been unlawfully altered

Paint Surface and Corrosion Protection

Aston Martin is not responsible for any repair or replacement that is required as a direct result of the following:

- Failure to properly maintain paint and bodywork by regular cleaning in accordance with Aston Martin instructions
- Factors beyond Aston Martin's control, such as environmental hazards (including industrial fall-out, storm damage, acid rain) and damage (including stone chips, scratches and use of unsuitable cleaning agents)
- Accident repairs using materials or methods of repair that have not been approved by Aston Martin
- Alterations of the vehicle from Aston Martin's original specification
- Failure to rectify on a timely basis any paint or corrosion damage as recorded in the vehicle documentation by a dealer at the time of the annual inspection

Other Exclusions

The Aston Martin warranty excludes liability for any lost time, inconvenience, loss of transportation, or any other incidental or consequential damage you (or anyone else) may incur as a result of a defect covered by this warranty.

Customer Responsibility

The customer literature will describe the proper care and use of the vehicle. Proper maintenance and use guard against major repair expenses resulting from misuse, neglect or inadequate maintenance, and may help increase the value that the customer may receive when selling the vehicle.

The Customer is responsible to:

- Make sure that the vehicle is maintained in accordance with the vehicle service and maintenance guide published in the customer literature

Failure to perform maintenance promptly and in accordance with Aston Martins specified service intervals will invalidate warranty coverage on the parts affected.

- The customer is required to present the vehicle to a dealer for any warranty repairs as soon as practicable after a defect is detected

- Make sure that the Service and Maintenance schedule has been stamped by the servicing dealer after the completion of a scheduled service operation
- Ensure that paint and bodywork is maintained by regular cleaning in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions
- Ensure that the body panels are examined annually by an authorised Aston Martin Dealer and that this inspection is recorded in the Owners Guide

Warranty Coverage when Touring

Aston Martin has a comprehensive service network in most parts of the world. Any authorised Aston Martin dealer can carry out repairs under the terms of the vehicle warranty. Under normal circumstances, the customer should not be required to pay for any warranty work performed by an Aston Martin dealer.

It is the customer's responsibility to produce the warranty documentation issued with the new vehicle. This establishes the customers right to warranty coverage and the relevant maintenance and service records. If the customer is unable do so, the dealer should seek advice from Aston Martin.

Extra Cover Warranties

Aston Martin Extra Cover Warranties are specifically designed to provide the customer with first class after-sales protection from unexpected repair costs when the vehicle warranty has expired.

Contact your Aston Martin Dealer for more information on the benefits and protection provided by these Extra Cover Warranties.

Consumer Law

The Aston Martin warranties are manufacturers' warranties that supplement and do not affect your legal rights under the vehicle purchase agreement with your selling dealer or under applicable national legislation governing the sale of consumer goods.

Owner Details

Name: _____

Address: _____

_____

_____

_____

Post Code: _____

Vehicle Details

Registration No.: _____

VIN No.: _____

Engine no.: _____

Warranty Start Date _____

Dealer Stamp

Signature.....Date.....

If the vehicle is sold, the benefits of any un-expired portion of the warranties can be transferred to the new owner.

The new owner should complete a 'tear off' sheet (next page) and send the new details to:

Aston Martin Warranty Department
Aston Martin Lagonda Limited
Banbury Road,
Gaydon,
WARWICK
Warwickshire,
CV35 0DB,
England

Owner Warranty Transfer

Registration No.:

VIN No.:

Recorded mileage: km / mile

Date of Purchase:

Name:

Address:

Post Code:

Telephone No.:

Signature **Date**

Owner Warranty Transfer

Registration No.:

VIN No.:

Recorded mileage: km / mile

Date of Purchase:

Name:

Address:

Post Code:

Telephone No.:

Signature **Date**

Owner Warranty Transfer

Registration No.:

VIN No.:

Recorded mileage: km / mile

Date of Purchase:

Name:

Address:

Post Code:

Telephone No.:

Signature **Date**

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

Dealer Directory

Contents

Australia D.3
Austria D.4
Belgium D.4
Canada D.5
Channel Islands D.6
Denmark D.6
England D.6
France D.9
Germany D.10
Holland D.12
Hong Kong D.12
Italy D.12
Japan D.13
Middle East D.14
Monaco D.14
New Zealand D.15
Northern Ireland D.15
Norway D.15
Portugal D.16
Scotland D.16
Singapore D.16
South Africa D.17
Spain D.17
Switzerland D.18
United States of America D.18
Wales D.24

This section lists all Aston Martin Dealers worldwide, where Sales and Service are provided by companies with the facilities, knowledge and factory trained personnel.

The information contained was compiled in July 2006. Whilst every effort is made to ensure accuracy, changes amongst holders of the Aston Martin franchise may occur. Neither Aston Martin nor any listed Importer or Dealer shall in any circumstances be held liable for any inaccuracy, or the consequences thereof.

Dealers listed here all aim to conform to Aston Martin standards of excellence in both Sales and Service. However, all cars sold as Aston Martins are required to meet local legislation requirements.

Should service be required in a country other than that in which this vehicle was originally purchased, every effort will be made to meet the owner's requirements, but the availability of certain parts may be affected by differences in vehicle and component specifications. If the nearest Aston Martin Dealer is unable to help, contact Aston Martin directly:

Aston Martin Lagonda Limited

Banbury Road, Gaydon, WARWICK, CV35 0DB

Telephone: (+44) (0)1926 644300

Facsimile: (+44) (0)1926 644733

Web Site: www.astonmartin.com

E-Mail: enquiries@astonmartin.com

Aston Martin Dealers are independent traders, they are not the Company's Agents, and therefore have no authority to bind the Company or to enter into any financial or other commitments on the Company's behalf.

Only Aston Martin Dealers are authorised to carry out warranty work.

Australia

Adelaide

Solitaire Aston Martin

32 Belair Rd., Hawthorn, Adelaide, SA 5062

Telephone:	(+61) 8 8272 8155
Facsimile:	(+61) 8 8373 0703
Web Site:	www.solitaireauto.com.au
E-Mail:	

Perth

Barbagallo Aston Martin

354 Scarborough Beach Rd., Osborne Park, Perth, WA 6017

Telephone:	(+61) 8 9231 5999
Facsimile:	(+61) 8 9242 3717
Web Site:	
E-Mail:	

Queensland

Sunshine Aston Martin

PO Box 794, Southport, Queensland, 4215

Telephone:	(+61) 7 5532 1833
Facsimile:	(+61) 7 5532 3361
Web Site:	www.southportmotors.com.au
E-Mail:	sales@southportmotors.com.au

Sydney

Trivett Classic Garage Pty. Ltd.

22-38 Yurong St., East Sydney, NSW 2010

Telephone:	(+61) 2 9383 9313
Facsimile:	(+61) 2 9383 9001
Web Site:	www.astonmartinsydney.com.au
E-Mail:	astonmartinsales@trivett.com.au

Victoria

Silverstone Aston Martin

591 Doncaster Rd., Doncaster, Victoria 3108

Telephone:	(+61) 3 9840 8811
Facsimile:	(+61) 3 9840 8800
Web Site:	www.silverstonecars.com.au
E-Mail:	recption@silverstonecarsjaguar.com.au

Austria

Salzburg

Aston Martin Salzburg

Wasserfeldstrasse 17a, 5020 Salzburg.

Telephone:	(+43) 662 887 8820
Facsimile:	(+43) 662 887 882 88
Web Site:	www.astonmartin.at
E-Mail:	salzburg@astonmartin.at

Vienna

Aston Martin Wien

Motorcity SCS, Autoallee 7, 2334 Vosendorf b., Wien.

Telephone:	(+43) 1 698 1200-0
Facsimile:	(+43) 1 698 1200-88
Web Site:	www.astonmartin.at
E-Mail:	wien@astonmartin.at

Belgium

Antwerp

Aston Martin Antwerp

Autolei 322, 2160 Wommelgem

Telephone:	(+32) (0) 3 354 3856
Facsimile:	(+32) (0) 3 354 5867
Web Site:	www.astonmartin-belgium.com
E-Mail:	info@astonmartin-antwerp.com

Antwerp

Aston Martin Belgium Sales, Service and Heritage

Blaasveldstraat 72, 2830 Tisselt

Telephone:	(+32) (0) 3 886 3910
Facsimile:	(+32) (0) 3 886 8102
Web Site:	www.astonmartin-belgium.com
E-Mail:	info@astonmartin-belgium.com

Brussels

Aston Martin Brussels

Borrestraat 23, 1932 St. Stevens-Woluwe

Telephone:	(+32) (0) 2720 4345
Facsimile:	(+32) (0) 2720 8474
Web Site:	
E-Mail:	info@astonmartin-brussels.com

Canada

British Columbia

MCL Motor Cars (1992) Inc.

1730 Burrard St., Vancouver, British Columbia, V6J 3G7

Telephone:	(+1) 604 738 5577
Facsimile:	(+1) 604 738 7677
Web Site:	www.mclmotorcars.com
E-Mail:	sales@mclmotorcars.com

Ontario

Aston Martin of Ontario

740 Dupont St., Toronto, Ontario, M6G 1Z6

Telephone:	(+1) 416 530 1880
Facsimile:	(+1) 416 530 4495
Web Site:	www.grandtouringautos.com
E-Mail:	sales@grandtouringautos.com

Quebec

Decarie Motors

8255 Bougainville St., Montreal, Quebec, H4P 2T3

Telephone:	(+1) 514 334 9910
Facsimile:	(+1) 514 336 0548
Web Site:	www.decarie.com
E-Mail:	astonmartin@decarie.com

ASTON MARTIN

Channel Islands

Jersey

Jacksons (CI) Limited

La Rue Fondon, St. Peter, Jersey, Channel Islands, JE3 7BF

Telephone:	(+44) (0) 1534 497777
Facsimile:	(+44) (0) 1534 497729
Web Site:	www.jacksonsci.com
E-Mail:	info@jacksons.je

ASTON MARTIN

Denmark

Copenhagen

Aston Martin Denmark

Bryggervangen 39, PO 2630, DK-2100, København Ø

Telephone:	(+45) 369 00 945
Facsimile:	(+45) 3927 2250
Web Site:	
E-Mail:	sales@aston-martin.dk

ASTON MARTIN

England

Berkshire

Lancaster Reading

Bennet Rd., Reading, Berkshire, RG2 0QX

Telephone:	(+44) (0)118 9658500
Facsimile:	(+44) (0)118 9658501
Web Site:	www.lancasterplc.com/reading/astonmartin
E-Mail:	astonmartin@reading.lancasterplc.com

Buckinghamshire

Aston Martin Lagonda Limited

Works Service, Tickford St., Newport Pagnell, MK16 9AN

Telephone:	(+44) (0)1908 619264
Facsimile:	(+44) (0)1908 216439
Web Site:	www.astonmartin.com
E-Mail:	service2@astonmartin.com

Stratstone

44 Woodside Rd., Amersham, Buckinghamshire, HP6 6AJ

Telephone:	(+44) (0)1494 788360
Facsimile:	(+44) (0)1494 788379
Web Site:	www.stratstone.com
E-Mail:	astonmartinamersham@stratstone.com

Cambridgeshire

Lancaster Cambridge

High St., Harston, Cambridge, CB2 5TN

Telephone:	(+44) (0)1223 875600
Facsimile:	(+44) (0)1223 875675
Web Site:	www.lancasterastonmartin.co.uk
E-Mail:	astonmartin@cambridge.lancasterplc.com

Cheshire

Stratstone of Wilmslow

Water Lane, Wilmslow, SK9 5BQ

Telephone: (+44) (0)1625 548802
Facsimile: (+44) (0)1625 526873
Web Site: www.stratstone.co.uk
E-Mail: stratstoneofwilmslow.astonmartin@pendragon.uk.com

Derbyshire

Stratstone Aston Martin Derby

Sir Frank Whittle Rd., Derby, DE21 4LT

Telephone: (+44) (0)1332 258787
Facsimile: (+44) (0)1332 258799
Web Site: www.astonsales.com
E-Mail: derbyastonmartin@stratstone.com

Devon

Grange of Exeter

Yeoford Way, Exeter, EX2 8LB

Telephone: (+44) (0)1392 678044
Facsimile: (+44) (0)1392 678048
Web Site: www.summitmotors.co.uk/grange
E-Mail: exeter@grange.co.uk

Essex

Grange Aston Martin

2 Brook St., Brentwood, CM14 5LU

Telephone: (+44) (0)1277 216161
Facsimile: (+44) (0)1277 220187
Web Site: www.grange.co.uk
E-Mail: info@grange.co.uk

Gloucestershire

Broughtons Aston Martin

Rutherford Way, Cheltenham, GL51 9SQ

Telephone: (+44) (0)1242 232667
Facsimile: (+44) (0)1242 232668
Web Site: www.broughtons.co.uk
E-Mail: info@broughtons.co.uk

Hertfordshire

Grange of Welwyn

Great North Rd., Stanborough, Welwyn Garden City AL8 7TQ

Telephone: (+44) (0)1707 280868
Facsimile: (+44) (0)1707 273150
Web Site: www.summitmotors.co.uk
E-Mail: welwyn@grange.co.uk

Kent

Lancaster Sevenoaks

114-115 London Rd., Sevenoaks, TN13 2DN

Telephone: (+44) (0)1732 456777
Facsimile: (+44) (0)1732 456566
Web Site: www.lancasterplc.com/sevenoaks/astonmartin
E-Mail: astonmartin@sevenoaks.jardine.co.uk

London

Stratstone of Mayfair

Brook House, Park Lane, London, W1K 7AJ

Telephone: (+44) (0)20 7235 8888
Facsimile: (+44) (0)20 7629 5376
Web Site: www.astonsales.com
E-Mail: mayfair@astonsales.com

Norfolk

Stratton Motor Company (Norfolk) Limited

Ipswich Rd., Long Stratton, Norwich, NR15 2XJ

Telephone: (+44) (0)1508 530491
Facsimile: (+44) (0)1508 531670
Web Site: www.strattonmotorcompany.com
E-Mail: sales@strattonmotorcompany.com

Surrey

HWM Aston Martin

New Zealand Ave., Walton on Thames, KT12 1AT

Telephone: (+44) (0)1932 240611
Facsimile: (+44) (0)1932 225440
Web Site: www.hwm.co.uk
E-Mail:

Tyne and Wear

Reg Vardy Specialist Cars

Stoneygate, Houghton le Spring, DH4 4NJ

Telephone: (+44) (0)191 512 3500
Facsimile: (+44) (0)191 512 3509
Web Site: www.regvardy.com
E-Mail:

West Midlands

Stratstone Aston Martin Birmingham

Monaco House, Bristol St., Birmingham, B5 7AU

Telephone: (+44) (0)121 666 6550
Facsimile: (+44) (0)121 666 6263
Web Site: www.astonsales.co.uk
E-Mail: pjevans.astonmartin@stratstone.com

West Sussex

Harwoods Aston Martin

Terminus Rd., Chichester, West Sussex, PO19 8TX

Telephone:	(+44) (0)1243 836500
Facsimile:	(+44) (0)1243 836525
Web Site:	www.harwoods.uk.com/astonmartin
E-Mail:	info@astonmartin.harwoods.uk.com

West Yorkshire

JCT 600 Leodis Court

102 Gelderd Rd., Leeds, LS12 6BY

Telephone:	(+44) (0)113 2440600
Facsimile:	(+44) (0)113 2442100
Web Site:	www.jct600.co.uk
E-Mail:	mail06@jct600.co.uk

France

Cannes

Royal Motors Cannes

1390 Avenue du Canpon, 06110 Le Cannet

Telephone:	(+33) 4 93 94 84 84
Facsimile:	(+33) 4 92 18 16 01
Web Site:	
E-Mail:	commercial@royal-motor.com

Paris

Auto Performance

23-25 Avenue Franklin D Roosevelt, 75008, Paris

Telephone:	(+33) 1 40 752085
Facsimile:	(+33) 1 40 752086
Web Site:	www.astonmartinparis.com
E-Mail:	app@astonmartinparis.com

Germany

Aachen

L. Hauswirth Exclusive Cars GMBH

Am Europaplatz, 52068 Aachen

Telephone:	(+49) 2 41 16 60 40
Facsimile:	(+49) 2 41 16 60 441
Web Site:	www.jaguar-hauswirth.de
E-Mail:	fahrzeuge@hauswirth.jaguar.de

Berlin

Krauthahn Berlin

Nestorstrasse 27-29, 10709 Berlin

Telephone:	(+49) 30 89 60 000
Facsimile:	(+49) 30 8 93 16 67
Web Site:	www.krauthahn-berlin.de
E-Mail:	service@krauthahn-berlin.de

Bremen

Tamsen GMBH

Hauptstrasse 55 (B 51), 28816 Stuhr, Bremen

Telephone:	(+49) 421 80 95 80
Facsimile:	(+49) 421 80 95 840
Web Site:	www.tamsen.de
E-Mail:	info@tamsen.de

Cologne

Royal Motors Kempen GMBH

Raderthalgurtel 2, 50968 Cologne

Telephone:	(+49) 2 21 93 47 80 - 0
Facsimile:	(+49) 2 21 93 47 80 - 45
Web Site:	www.astonmartin-koeln.de
E-Mail:	info@astonmartin.koeln.de

Dortmund

Aston Martin Dortmund

Hannoversche Strasse 44, 44143 Dortmund

Telephone:	(+49) 231 91 20 40 80
Facsimile:	(+49) 231 91 20 40 49
Web Site:	www.premiumcars-peters.de
E-Mail:	

Dresden

Thomas Exclusive Cars GMBH

Meissner Str. 34, 01445 Radebeul

Telephone:	(+49) 351 404 6420
Facsimile:	(+49) 351 404 6410
Web Site:	www.astonmartin-dresden.de
E-Mail:	info@astonmartin-dresden.de

Dusseldorf

Moll Sportwagen GMBH

Willstatterstr. 45, 40549 Dusseldorf

Telephone:	(+49) 211 9446 01
Facsimile:	(+49) 211 9446 1730
Web Site:	www.moll.de
E-Mail:	info@moll.de

Frankfurt

Autohaus Kronberg GMBH

Frankfurter Strasse, D-61476 Kronberg T/S, Frankfurt

Telephone:	(+49) 6173 640015
Facsimile:	(+49) 6173 64873
Web Site:	www.astonmartin-kronberg.de
E-Mail:	

Hamburg

Tamsen GMBH

Merkurring 2, 22143 Hamburg

Telephone:	(+49) 40 5700 3000
Facsimile:	(+49) 40 5700 3040
Web Site:	www.tamsen.de
E-Mail:	info@tamsen.de

Mannheim

Kroymans Autohaus Mannheim GMBH

Saarburger Ring 19-21, 68229 Mannheim

Telephone:	(+49) 621 48380-0
Facsimile:	(+49) 621 48380-99
Web Site:	
E-Mail:	

Munich

Autohaus Avalon München GMBH

Odeonsplatz 2, 80539 München

Telephone:	(+49) 89 2870 120
Facsimile:	(+49) 89 2870 1222
Web Site:	www.avalon-muenchen.de
E-Mail:	astonmartin.muenchen@autohaus-avalon.de

Stuttgart

Schwabengarage AG

Cannstatter Strasse 46, 70190 Stuttgart

Telephone:	(+49) 711 2803 2100
Facsimile:	(+49) 711 2803 2105
Web Site:	www.premium-cars.de
E-Mail:	info@premium-cars.de

Holland

Eindhoven

Cito Motors B.V.

Huizingalaan 66, 5628 CM Eindhoven

Telephone:	(+31) 40 29 01 110
Facsimile:	(+31) 40 24 14 956
Web Site:	
E-Mail:	

Hilversum

Kroymans Aston Martin B.V.

Soestdijkerstraatweg 66, 1213 XE Hilversum

Telephone:	(+31) 35 646 2200
Facsimile:	(+31) 35 683 5646
Web Site:	www.astonmartin.nl
E-Mail:	sales@astonmartin.nl

Hong Kong

Aston Martin (HK) Ltd.

G/F, 63 Blue Pool Rd., Happy Valley, Hong Kong

Telephone:	(+852) 2366 2017
Facsimile:	(+852) 2191 9117
Web Site:	
E-Mail:	

Italy

Bologna

EmilianAuto Spa.

Via de Carracci 6, 40131 Bologna

Telephone:	(+39) 0 51 638 2111
Facsimile:	(+39) 0 51 638 2202
Web Site:	www.eagroup.it
E-Mail:	info@eagroup.it

Padova

Aston Martin Padova

Via Nona Strada, 23/L, 35129 Padova

Telephone:	(+39) 049 807 9516
Facsimile:	(+39) 049 807 9464
Web Site:	www.astonmartinpadova.it
E-Mail:	info@jcars.it

Rome

Aston Martin Rome

Via G Antonelli 2, 00197 Rome

Telephone:	(+39) 06808 2487
Facsimile:	(+39) 06808 2415
Web Site:	
E-Mail:	

Japan

Tokyo

Atlantic Cars Limited

2-3-3 Azabudai, Minato-ku, Tokyo 106 – 0041

Telephone:	(+81) (0)3 3583 8611
Facsimile:	(+81) (0)3 3583 8613
Web Site:	www.astonmartin.co.jp
E-Mail:	atlantic_cars@astonmartin.co.jp

Aston Martin Akasaka

Shintoyo Akasaka Building, 4-9-25 Akasaka, Minato-ku 107-0052, Tokyo

Telephone:	(+81) 3 5411 2332
Facsimile:	(+81) 3 3479 0774
Web Site:	www.astonmartin-akasaka.com
E-Mail:	info@astonmartin-akasaka.com

Osaka

Aston Martin Osaka Hakko

1-19-1 Kitahorie, Nishi-ku, Osaka 550-0014

Telephone:	(+81) (0)6 6531 0078
Facsimile:	(+81) (0)6 6531 0118
Web Site:	www.astonmartin-osaka.co.jp
E-Mail:	astonmartin-osaka@hakko-group.co.jp

Nagoya

Aston Martin Nagoya

2-1-6 Higashinoshinmachi, Kasugai, Aichi, 486-0816

Telephone:	(+81) (0)568 86 4070
Facsimile:	(+81) (0)568 86 4010
Web Site:	www.astonmartin-nagoya.co.jp
E-Mail:	adim@astonmartin-nagoya.com

Middle East

Middle East Aston Martin FZE

Floor 23, Emirates Towers, Dubai

Telephone:	(+971) 4 330 0999
Facsimile:	(+971) 4 330 0777
Web Site:	www.mideastaston.com
E-Mail:	management@mideastaston.com

Dubai

Al Habtoor Motors Co. (LLC)

Sharjah Rd., Port Saeed Area, Dubai

Telephone:	(+971) 4 269 1110
Facsimile:	(+971) 4 269 2545
Web Site:	www.habtoormotors.com
E-Mail:	astonmartin@www.habtoormotors.com

Beirut

Mana Automotive S.A.L.

Aston Martin & Land Rover Building, Chouran, Unesco, Verdun, PO Box 11-5800, Beirut

Telephone: (+961) 1 800001
Facsimile: (+961) 1 785205
Web Site:
E-Mail: astonmartin@tewtelgroup.com

Monaco

Monte Carlo

British Motors SAM

15 Boulevard Princesse Charlotte, 98000 Monte Carlo

Telephone: (+377) 97 978 978
Facsimile: (+377) 97 978 989
Web Site:
E-Mail: aston-martin@british-motor.com

New Zealand

Auckland

Independant Presitige Limited

150 Great North Rd., PO Box 68 537, Grey Lynn, Auckland

Telephone: (+64) (0) 9 360 3202
Facsimile: (+64) (0) 9 361 6403
Web Site: www.astonmartin.co.nz
E-Mail: sales@iprestige.co.nz

Northern Ireland

Antrim

Charles Hurst Limited

62 Boucher Rd., Belfast, BT12 6LR

Telephone: (+44) (0) 28 9038 1721
Facsimile: (+44) (0) 28 9066 2355
Web Site: www.charles-hurst.com
E-Mail:

Norway

Oslo

As Insignia

Sofienberggaten 35, N-0558 Oslo

Telephone: (+47) 2323 3377
Facsimile: (+47) 2323 3301
Web Site: www.insignia.no
E-Mail:

Portugal

Porto

Jaguar Automoveis LDA

Avenida de França, 256-366 Edificio Capitolio, 4050-276, Porto

Telephone: (+351) 22 834 77 00 / 22 830 18 44
Facsimile: (+351) 22 610 3857
Web Site:
E-Mail:

Lisbon

Jaguar Automoveis Lisboa S.A.

Rua Antonio Enes 21 A, 1050-023 Lisboa

Telephone: (+351) 21 31 92 382
Facsimile: (+351) 21 31 92 389
Web Site:
E-Mail:

Scotland

Lothian

Murray Motor Company

6 Bankhead Drive, Sighthill, Edinburgh, EH11 4DJ

Telephone:	(+44) (0) 131 442 2800
Facsimile:	(+44) (0) 131 458 3296
Web Site:	www.murrayastonmartin.co.uk
E-Mail:	murraymotorcompany@jmgroup.co.uk

Singapore

Aston Martin Lagonda (SEA) PTE Ltd.

Number 1 Tuas Basin Link, Singapore 638755

Telephone:	(+65) 6862 5868
Facsimile:	(+65) 6862 5388
Web Site:	www.astonmartin.com.sg
E-Mail:	topmarques@pacific.net.sg

South Africa

Johannesburg

Aston Martin Sandton

Sandton Isle, Corner Rivonia and Lindon Rd., Sandton 2196

Telephone:	(+27) 11 301 7100
Facsimile:	(+27) 11 301 7101
Web Site:	
E-Mail:	info@astonmartin.co.za

Spain

Barcelona

Aston Martin Barcelona

Roger de Lluria 115, 08037 Barcelona

Telephone:	(+34) 215 21 70
Facsimile:	(+34) 93 215 21 74
Web Site:	www.astonmartinbcn.com
E-Mail:	

Madrid

C De Salamanca SA

C/Zurbano, 93-95, 28003, Madrid

Telephone:	(+34) 91 554 8293
Facsimile:	(+34) 91 553 5206
Web Site:	www.cdesalamanca.com
E-Mail:	serradilla@cdesalamanca.com

Marbella

C De Salamanca SA

Carretera de Cádiz KM 171, 29670 San Pedro de Alcántara, Marbella

Telephone:	(+34) 952 78 52 50
Facsimile:	(+34) 952 78 03 66
Web Site:	www.cdesalamanca.com
E-Mail:	

Switzerland

Geneva

Garage P Keller SA

2 Rue du Grand Pré, 1202 Genève, Suisse

Telephone:	(+41) 22 919 0500
Facsimile:	(+41) 22 919 0509
Web Site:	www.garage-keller.ch
E-Mail:	geneve@garage-keller.ch

Safenwil

Emil Frey AG

Autocenter Safenwil, Industrie Nord, 5745 Safenwil

Telephone:	(+41) 62 788 8888
Facsimile:	(+41) 62 788 8260
Web Site:	www.emilfrey.ch
E-Mail:	autocenter@emilfrey.ch

Lugano

Garage Tarcisio Pasta SA

Via Monteceneri 1, 6593 Cadenazzo

Telephone: (+41) (0) 91 850 2020
Facsimile: (+41) (0) 91 850 2021
Web Site: www.tpasta.ch
E-Mail: astonmartin@tpasta.ch

Zurich

Emil Frey A.G.

Badenerstrasse 6001, 8048 Zurich

Telephone: (+41) (0) 1 495 2311
Facsimile: (+41) (0) 1 495 0470
Web Site: www.emilfrey.ch
E-Mail:

United States of America

Aston Martin Lagonda of North America Inc.

533 MacArthur Boulevard, Mahwah, NJ 07430

Telephone: (+1) 201 818 8352
Facsimile: (+1) 201 818 8328
Web Site: www.astonmartin.com
E-Mail:

Arizona

Aston Martin Scottsdale

6825 East McDowell Rd., Scottsdale, AZ 85257

Telephone: (+1) 480 421 7240
Facsimile: (+1) 480 421 3805
Web Site: www.sunauto.com
E-Mail:

California

Aston Martin of Beverly Hills

8833 West Olympic Boulevard, Beverly Hills, CA 90211

Telephone: (+1) 310 659 4050
Facsimile: (+1) 310 652 9656
Web Site: www.astonmartinbeverlyhills.com
E-Mail:

Aston Martin Marin

195 Casa Buena Drive, Corte Madera, CA 94925

Telephone: (+1) 415 496 2100
Facsimile: (+1) 415 496 2171
Web Site:
E-Mail:

Aston Martin Silicon Valley
66 East Main St., Los Gatos, CA 95030

Telephone:	(+1) 408 354 4000
Facsimile:	(+1) 408 354 6285
Web Site:	www.siliconvalleyautogroup.com
E-Mail:	

Bauer Aston Martin
1455 South Auto Mall Drive, Santa Ana, CA 92705

Telephone:	(+1) 714 953 4800
Facsimile:	(+1) 714 953 4891
Web Site:	www.bauerastonmartin.com
E-Mail:	

Cole European
2103 North Main St., Walnut Creek, CA 94596

Telephone:	(+1) 925 935 2653
Facsimile:	(+1) 925 935 0743
Web Site:	www.coleeuropean.com
E-Mail:	

Cush Aston Martin of San Diego
5202 Kearney Mesa Rd., San Diego, CA 92111

Telephone:	(+1) 858 541 0200
Facsimile:	(+1) 858 541 7696
Web Site:	www.cushauto.com
E-Mail:	

Desert European
71-387 Highway 111, Rancho Mirage, CA 92270

Telephone:	(+1) 760 773 5000
Facsimile:	(+1) 760 773 4406
Web Site:	www.deserteuropean.com
E-Mail:	

Galpin Aston Martin
15500 Roscoe Boulevard, Van Nuys, California, 91406

Telephone:	(+1) 818 894 3800
Facsimile:	(+1) 818 922 3668
Web Site:	www.galpinastonmartin.com
E-Mail:	

Colorado

Sill-Terhar Aston Martin

PO Box 344, Broomfield, Denver, CO 80038

Telephone: (+1) 303 469 1801
Facsimile: (+1) 720 284 0792
Web Site: www.peopleastonmartin.com
E-Mail:

Connecticut

Miller Motor Cars Inc.

275 West Putnam Avenue, Greenwich, CT 06830

Telephone: (+1) 203 629 4726
Facsimile: (+1) 203 629 3418
Web Site: www.millermotorcars.com
E-Mail:

Florida

Aston Martin of Tampa Bay

320 East Fletcher Avenue, Tampa, Florida 33612

Telephone: (+1) 813 371 8200
Facsimile: (+1) 813 371 8199
Web Site: www.astonmartinoftampa.com
E-Mail:

Aston Martin Palm Beach

915 South Dixie Highway, West Palm Beach, FL 33401

Telephone: (+1) 561 659 6206
Facsimile: (+1) 561 832 7176
Web Site: www.palmbeachmotorcars.com
E-Mail:

Aston Martin Naples

850 Tamiami Trail North, Naples, Florida 34102

Telephone: (+1) 239 263 6070
Facsimile: (+1) 239 263 8058
Web Site: www.sheltondealerships.com
E-Mail:

The Collection

200 Bird Rd., Coral Gables, FL 33146

Telephone: (+1) 305 444 5555
Facsimile: (+1) 305 446 4046
Web Site: www.thecollection.com
E-Mail:

Georgia

Aston Martin of Atlanta

11875 Alpharetta Highway, Roswell, GA 30076

Telephone: (+1) 678 802 5007
Facsimile: (+1) 678 802 5019
Web Site: www.astonmartinus.com
E-Mail: 007@astonmartinus.com

Illinois

Lake Forest Sports Cars Limited

990 North Shore Drive, Lake Bluff, IL 60045

Telephone: (+1) 847 295 6560
Facsimile: (+1) 847 295 8849
Web Site: www.ifsc.com
E-Mail: sales@ifsc.com

Massachusetts

Aston Martin of New England

85 Linden St., Waltham, MA 02452

Telephone: (+1) 781 547 5959
Facsimile: (+1) 781 547 5957
Web Site: www.astonmartin-lotus.com
E-Mail: lotusmotor@aol.com

Michigan

Aston Martin of Troy

1815 Maplelawn, Troy, MI 48084

Telephone: (+1) 248 643 6900
Facsimile: (+1) 248 643 9261
Web Site: www.astonmartinoftroy.com
E-Mail: info@astonmartinoftroy.com

Missouri

Moore Aston Martin

14116 Manchester Rd., St. Louis, MA 63011

Telephone: (+1) 800 524 7278
Facsimile: (+1) 636 779 2024
Web Site: www.moorejaguarastonmartin.com
E-Mail:

New York

Millar Motor Cars

Aston Martin Long Island Sales, 1060 North Blvd., Roslyn, NY11576

Telephone: (+1) 516 478 4326
Facsimile: (+1) 516 478 4327
Web Site:
E-Mail:

Nevada

Gaudin Aston Martin of Las Vegas

7200 West Sahara Avenue, Las Vegas, Nevada 89117

Telephone: (+1) 702 284 7000
Facsimile: (+1) 702 221 4422
Web Site: www.jplv.net
E-Mail:

New Jersey

F.C. Kerbeck Aston Martin

100 Route 73 North, Palmyra, NJ 08065

Telephone: (+1) 856 829 8200
Facsimile: (+1) 856 829 7009
Web Site: www.fckerbeck.net
E-Mail: exotics@fckerbeck.net

Ray Catena Aston Martin

910 US Route 1, Edison, NJ 08817

Telephone: (+1) 732 205 9000
Facsimile: (+1) 732 205 9101
Web Site: www.raycatena.com
E-Mail:

North Carolina

Foreign Cars Aston Martin

5603 Roanne Way, Greensboro, NC 27409

Telephone: (+1) 336 294 0200
Facsimile: (+1) 336 294 9109
Web Site:
E-Mail:

Ohio

Midwestern Auto Group

6335 Perimeter Loop Rd., Dublin, OH 43017

Telephone: (+1) 614 889 2571
Facsimile: (+1) 614 793 7971
Web Site: www.magcars.com
E-Mail:

Aston Martin of Cleveland

99 Broadway, Bedford, OH 44146

Telephone: (+1) 440 359 1515
Facsimile: (+1) 440 359 1525
Web Site:
E-Mail:

Pennsylvania

Bobby Rahal Aston Martin

15035 Perry Highway, Wexford, PA 15090

Telephone: (+1) 724 940 3530
Facsimile: (+1) 724 940 3430
Web Site: www.bobbyrahal.com
E-Mail:

Texas

Aston Martin Dallas

5333 Lemmon Ave., Dallas, TX 75209

Telephone: (+1) 214 522 1007
Facsimile: (+1) 214 353 3550
Web Site: www.astonmartindallas.com
E-Mail:

Star Motor Cars

7000 Katy Rd., Houston, TX 77024

Telephone: (+1) 713 868 6800
Facsimile: (+1) 832 615 5931
Web Site: www.starmotorcars.com
E-Mail: starhoutx@aol.com

Virginia

Aston Martin Tysons

8545 Leesbueg Pike, Vienna, VA 22182

Telephone: (+1) 703 442 8200
Facsimile: (+1) 703 448 0232
Web Site: www.hbloftysons.com
E-Mail:

Washington

Aston Martin Seattle

311 Baker Boulevard, Seattle, Washington 98188

Telephone: (+1) 206 838 4646
Facsimile: (+1) 206 433 0216
Web Site: www.astonmartinseattle.com
E-Mail: sales@astonmartinseattle.com

ASTON MARTIN

Wales

South Glamorgan

Stratstone Aston Martin Cardiff

Cambria House, 156 North Rd., Cardiff, CF14 3BH

Telephone: (+44) (0) 2920 695700

Facsimile: (+44) (0) 2920 695718

Web Site:

E-Mail: cardiff@aston-martin-sales.co.uk

Alphabetical Index

A

Accessory Power Socket 3.24
Acknowledge messages 4.5
Air Conditioning
  Automatic Operation 7.6
  Control Switches 7.3
  Dehumidifying 7.9
  Manual Operation 7.7
  Operating Tips 7.2
Alarm
  Deactivate / Activate 2.5
  Movement Sensor (Option) 2.14
  Tilt Sensor (Option) 2.14
Ambient Temperature Display 4.22
Anti Corrosion Inspection A.13
Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS) 5.12
Approach Lighting 2.12
Aston Martin Assistance B.1
Aston Martin Tracking 2.2
Aston Martin Warranties C.1
Audio
  CD Changer 8.17
  Radio Data System – RDS 8.9
  Radio Functions 8.7
  Sound Setting 8.6
Automatic Transmission
  Driving 5.8
  Limp-home Mode 5.7
  Park (P) Override 5.6
  PRND Buttons 5.3
  Shift by Wire 5.3
  Sport Mode 5.5
  Touchtronic Mode 5.5

B

Battery Charge 12.24
Battery Disconnect Switch 12.30
Battery Maintenance 12.25
Battery Protection Mode 8.5, 9.2, 12.28
Bluetooth (Option)
  Connecting a Phone 10.5
  Contact List 10.14
  Getting Help 10.5
  LED Indicator Functions 10.19
  Making Calls 10.8
  Receiving Calls 10.10
  Removing a Phone 10.7
Bonnet - Opening / Closing 12.8
Boot Emergency Release 2.11
Brakes
  Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS) 5.12
  Footbrake 5.11
  Handbrake 5.13
Bulb Changing 12.36
Bulb Kit 12.36

C

Car Phone (Option)
  Controls 9.2
  Emergency Calls 9.4
  Making Calls 9.7
  Operation 9.6
  Phone Book 9.10
  Receiving Calls 9.7
Catalytic Converters 5.17
CD Changer 8.17
Child Safety 3.19
Child Seats 3.20
  Automatic Locking Retractors (ALR) 3.21
Closing the Roof (Volante) 6.5
Coat Hooks 3.27
Condensation, Headlamp Units 12.36
Continental Driving (UK Only) 12.38
Controls
  Centre Stack 4.12
  Information / Warning Lights 4.6
  Instrument Cluster 4.4
  Stalk Controls 4.11

Convertible Roof (Volante)
Cleaning 12.42
Closing the Roof 6.5
Deployable Rollbars 3.22, 6.10
Manual Operation 6.6
Opening the Roof 6.4
Reproofs 12.42
Roof Operation 6.2
Wind Deflector (Option) 6.12
Cruise Control 4.20
Cruise Status 4.5

D

Dangerous Substances 12.5
Data Recording 1.5
Day Time Running Lights 4.17
Deadlocking 2.12
Dealer Directory D.1
Defrosting / Demisting
Automatic 7.6
Manual 7.8
Deployable Rollbars (Volante) 3.22, 6.10
Door Mirrors 3.8
Auto Fold 3.9
Memory Mirrors 3.8
Power Fold 3.8
Reversing Dip 3.9
Drive-Away Locking 2.12
Driving
Automatic Transmission 5.3
Manual Transmission 5.10
Safety 5.2
Driving Techniques 5.20
Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) 5.14

E

Electric Windows 3.26
Emergency - What To Do B.2
Emergency Items
First Aid Kit (Option) 12.6
Tyre Sealant Kit 12.6
Warning Triangle 12.6
Emergency Telephone Numbers B.3
Emission Warranty 12.3
Engine Start Switch 4.13

F

Fog Light Switch 4.13
Footbrake 5.11
Fuel
  Catalytic Converters 5.17
  Filler Flap Emergency Release 4.16
Fuel Filler Cap 5.16
Fuel Flap Switch 4.16
Fuel Gauge 4.4
Fuses 12.32

G

Garage Door Opener (Option) 2.18
  Operation 2.20
  Programming 2.19
  Reprogramming a Single HomeLink® Button 2.22
  Rolling Code Synchronisation 2.21
Gear Position Indicator Display 4.5
Gearshift Paddles 5.5
Glovebox 4.13

H

Handbrake 5.13
Hazard Warning Lights 4.14
Headlamp Condensation 12.36
Headlight Levelling 4.17
Heated Rear Window Switch 4.15
Homesafe 2.13
Horn 4.17

I

Ignition Lock 4.18
Infotainment Centre 4.13
Interior Mirrors
  Automatic Dimming (Option) 3.7
  Manual Dip 3.7
  Vanity 3.7
Interior Storage 3.23

L

Leaving the Boot Open While the
Vehicle is Locked 2.11
Levels
  Brake Fluid 12.12
  Engine Coolant 12.12
  Power Steering Fluid 12.13
  Washer Fluid 12.10

Lights On Warning 4.17
Limp-home Mode 5.7
Locking the Vehicle 2.7
Low Outside Temperature Warning 4.9

M

Maintenance 12.8
  Bulb Changing 12.36
  Fluid Levels 12.10
  Vehicle Jacking 12.3
Maintenance Items 12.7
  Battery Conditioner 12.7
  Bulb Kit 12.36
  Tool Kit 12.7
Master Lamp Switch 4.16
Maximum Engine Speed 5.6
Memory Mirrors 3.8
Memory Seats 3.4
  Emergency Stop 3.5
Message Display (Left) 4.4
Message Display (Right) 4.5
Mirrors 3.7
  Door 3.8

O

Opening the Roof (Volante) 6.4

P

Paint Work 12.40
Panic Alarm 2.13
Park (P) Override 5.6
Parking Assist
  Front and Rear (Option) 5.19
  Rear 5.18
Passive Anti-Theft System 2.16
Personalisation. Remote Transmitter, ... 2.23
PRND Buttons 5.3

R

Reading Lamps 3.27
Reduced Guard Switch 4.16
Registration Plate Lights 12.38
Remote Transmitter 2.4
Remote Transmitter Battery Replacement 2.15
Replacement of Airbag Units Record A.16
Replacement of Seat Belt Pre-tensioners Record A.16

Restraints System 3.10
Child Safety 3.19
Determining if the System is Operational 3.12
Seat Belts 3.12
Rollbars (Volante) 3.22, 6.10
Roof Operation (Volante) 6.2

S

Safety Defects - Reporting 1.6
Satellite Navigation
Changing the DVD 11.3
Demo 11.13
Getting Starting 11.4
Seat Adjustment 3.3
Seat Back Release 3.6
Seat Belts 3.12
Care and Maintenance 12.43
Child Restraints 3.15
Seat Comfort 3.2
Service Interval display 4.5
Service Periods A.4
Service Record A.9
Service Schedules A.4
Servicing Precautions 12.4
Shift by Wire 5.3
SIM Card 9.5
Specifications
Brakes 13.5
Engine 13.2
Exterior Features 13.13
Infotainment Centre 13.13
Interior Features 13.12
Performance 13.2
Recommended Fluids 13.14
Steering 13.5
Suspension 13.5
Weights 13.8
Wheel Nut Torque 13.6
Wheels and Tyres 13.6
Sport Mode (Auto Only)
Status 4.4
Switch 4.15

Starting the Engine 5.2
Steering Wheel 6.7
Steering Wheel Adjustment 3.6
Storage 3.23
Supplemental Restraints System (SRS) 3.16

T

Tachometer 4.5
Touchtronic Mode 5.5
Towing 12.22
Traction Control 5.15
Transmission Control Switches 4.13, 5.3
Trip Computer 4.18
Trip Meter 4.4
Tyre Pressure Sensing 4.22
Tyre Sealant Kit 12.6
Tyre Sealant System 12.18

U

Umbrella 3.27
Unlocking the Vehicle 2.5
Unlocking using the Ignition Key 2.6
Unnecessary Battery Drain 4.18

V

Vanity Mirror 3.7
Vehicle Identification 1.5
Vehicle Key 2.4
Vehicle Provenance 1.6
Vehicle Storage 12.44

W

Warning Triangle 12.6
Wheel Nut Torque 13.6
Wind Deflector (Option (Volante)) 6.12
Window Reset 12.40
Windscreen Blade Replacement 12.14
Winter Wheels 13.6
Wipers 4.11
  Wiper Control 4.11

CE **Remote Transmitter**

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN